

Farming Systems and Food Security in Africa

Knowledge of Africa's complex farming systems, set in their socio-economic and environmental context, is an essential ingredient to developing effective strategies for improving food and nutrition security.

This book systematically and comprehensively describes the characteristics, trends, drivers of change and strategic priorities for each of Africa's fifteen farming systems and their main subsystems. It shows how a farming systems perspective can be used to identify pathways to household food security and poverty reduction, and how strategic interventions may need to differ from one farming system to another. In the analysis, emphasis is placed on understanding farming systems drivers of change, trends and strategic priorities for science and policy.

Illustrated with full-colour maps and photographs throughout, the volume provides a comprehensive and insightful analysis of Africa's farming systems and pathways for the future to improve food and nutrition security. The book is an essential follow-up to the seminal work *Farming Systems and Poverty* by Dixon and colleagues for the Food and Agriculture Organization (FAO) of the United Nations and the World Bank, published in 2001.

John Dixon is Principal Adviser Research & Program Manager, Cropping Systems and Economics, Australian Centre for International Agricultural Research (ACIAR), Canberra, Australia.

Dennis Garrity is Senior Fellow at the World Agroforestry Centre (ICRAF), based in Nairobi, Kenya, UNCCD Drylands Ambassador, and Chair of the EverGreen Agriculture Partnership.

Jean-Marc Boffa is Director of Terra Sana Projects and Associate Fellow of the World Agroforestry Centre (ICRAF), Nairobi, Kenya.

Timothy Olalekan Williams is Regional Director for Africa at the International Water Management Institute (IWMI), based in Accra, Ghana.

Tilahun Amede is Principal Scientist and Systems Agronomist at the International Crops Research Institute for Semi-Arid Tropics (ICRISAT), Nairobi, Kenya.

Christopher Auricht is Managing Director of Auricht Projects, a niche international consulting firm based in Adelaide, Australia.

Rosemary Lott is Director of Vegetation Connections Pty Ltd, and an Assistant Director, Australian Government Department of Agriculture, Canberra, Australia.

George Mburathi is a former FAO Deputy Regional Representative for Africa, Nairobi, Kenya.

Earthscan Food and Agriculture Series

Sustainable Intensification of Agriculture

Greening the World's Food Economy

Jules N. Pretty and Zareen Pervez Bharucha

Contested Sustainability Discourses in the Agrifood System

Edited by Douglas H. Constance, Jason Konefal and Maki Hatanaka

The Financialization of Agri-Food Systems

Contested Transformations

Edited by Hilde Bjørkhaug, André Magnan and Geoffrey Lawrence

Redesigning the Global Seed Commons

Law and Policy for Agrobiodiversity and Food Security

Christine Frison

Organic Food and Farming in China

Top-down and Bottom-up Ecological Initiatives

Steffanie Scott, Zhenzhong Si, Theresa Schumilas and Aijuan Chen

Farming, Food and Nature

A Sustainable Future for Animals, People and the Environment

Edited by Joyce D'Silva and Carol McKenna

Governing Sustainable Seafood

Peter Oosterveer and Simon Bush

Farming Systems and Food Security in Africa

Priorities for Science and Policy Under Global Change

Edited by John Dixon, Dennis P. Garrity, Jean-Marc Boffa, Timothy Olalekan Williams, Tilahun Amede with Christopher Auricht, Rosemary Lott and George Mburathi

Consumers, Meat and Animal Products

Policies, Regulations and Marketing

Terence J. Centner

For further details please visit the series page on the Routledge website: www.routledge.com/books/series/ECEFA/

Farming Systems and Food Security in Africa

Priorities for Science and Policy under
Global Change

**Edited by John Dixon, Dennis P. Garrity,
Jean-Marc Boffa, Timothy Olalekan Williams,
Tilahun Amede**
*with Christopher Auricht, Rosemary Lott and
George Mburathi*

 **Routledge**
Taylor & Francis Group
LONDON AND NEW YORK

earhscan
from Routledge

First published 2020
by Routledge
2 Park Square, Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon OX14 4RN

and by Routledge
52 Vanderbilt Avenue, New York, NY 10017

Routledge is an imprint of the Taylor & Francis Group, an informa business

© 2020 World Agroforestry Centre (ICRAF)

The right of World Agroforestry Centre (ICRAF) to be identified as author of this work has been asserted by them in accordance with sections 77 and 78 of the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reprinted or reproduced or utilised in any form or by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publishers.

Trademark notice: Product or corporate names may be trademarks or registered trademarks, and are used only for identification and explanation without intent to infringe.

British Library Cataloguing-in-Publication Data

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Names: Dixon, John (John Mezies), editor, author. | Garrity, Dennis P., editor, author. | Boffa, Jean-Marc, editor, author. | Williams, Timothy O., editor, author. | Tilahun Amede, editor, author. | Auricht, Christopher, editor, author. | Lott, Rosemary, editor, author. | Mburathi, George K., editor, author.

Title: Farming systems and food security in Africa : priorities for science and policy under global change / edited by John Dixon, Dennis P. Garrity, Jean-Marc Boffa, Timothy Olalekan Williams, Tilahun Amede with Christopher Auricht, Rosemary Lott and George Mburathi.

Description: New York : Routledge, 2019. | Includes bibliographical references and index.

Identifiers: LCCN 2018035011 | ISBN 9781138963351 (hardback)

Subjects: LCSH: Agricultural systems—Africa. | Farmers—Africa—Economic conditions. | Rural development—Africa. | Food supply—Africa. | Rural poor—Africa. | Sustainable agriculture—Africa.

Classification: LCC HD2117 .F37 2019 | DDC 338.1096—dc23

LC record available at <https://lcn.loc.gov/2018035011>

ISBN: 978-1-138-96335-1 (hbk)

ISBN: 978-1-315-65884-1 (ebk)

Typeset in Bembo

by Swales & Willis, Exeter, Devon, UK

World Agroforestry Centre (ICRAF)

The World Agroforestry Centre (ICRAF) is a centre of scientific excellence that harnesses the benefits of trees for people and the environment. Leveraging the world's largest repository of agroforestry science and information, we develop knowledge practices, for farmers' fields to the global sphere, to ensure food security and environmental sustainability.

ICRAF is the only institution conducting globally significant agroforestry research in and for all of the developing tropics. Knowledge produced by ICRAF allows governments, development agencies and farmers to use the power of trees to make farming livelihoods more environmentally, socially and economically sustainable at scales.

ICRAF's headquarters are based in Nairobi, Kenya, and we operate six regional programmes in Sub-Saharan Africa, Asia and Latin America. Our vision is an equitable world where all people have viable livelihoods supported by healthy and productive landscapes. Our mission is to harness the multiple benefits trees provide for agriculture, livelihoods, resilience and the future of our planet, from farmers' fields through to continental scales.

About the Technical Centre for Agricultural and Rural Cooperation (CTA)

The Technical Centre for Agricultural and Rural Cooperation (CTA) is a joint international institution of the African, Caribbean and Pacific (ACP) Group of States and the European Union (EU). CTA operates under the framework of the Cotonou Agreement and is funded by the EU.

For more information on CTA, visit www.cta.int



Taylor & Francis

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

Contents

<i>List of figures</i>	x
<i>List of tables</i>	xv
<i>List of boxes</i>	xx
<i>List of contributors</i>	xxii
<i>Preface</i>	xxvii
<i>Acknowledgements</i>	xxix
<i>Abbreviations</i>	xxxii
PART I	
Introduction	1
1 Africa through the farming systems lens: context and approach	3
JOHN DIXON, DENNIS GARRITY, JEAN-MARC BOFFA, ADAMA EKBERG COULIBALY, MEDHAT EL-HELEPI, CHRISTOPHER M. AURICHT AND GEORGE MBURATHI	
2 Methods and data sources	37
CHRISTOPHER M. AURICHT, JOHN DIXON, JEAN-MARC BOFFA, HARRIJ VAN VELTHUIZEN AND GÜNTHER FISCHER	
PART II	
Analyses of farming systems	65
3 Maize mixed farming system: an engine for rural growth and poverty reduction	67
MALCOLM BLACKIE, JOHN DIXON, MAXWELL MUDHARA, JOSEPH RUSIKE, SIEGLINDE SNAPP AND MULUGETTA MEKURIA	
4 The agropastoral farming system: achieving adaptation and harnessing opportunities under duress	105
JEAN-MARC BOFFA, JOHN SANDERS, SIBIRI JEAN-BAPTISTE TAONDA, PIERRE HIERNAUX, MINAMBA BAGAYOKO, SHADRECK NCUBE AND JUSTICE NYAMANGARA	

5 The highland perennial farming system: sustainable intensification and the limits of farm size	148
JOHN LYNAM	
6 The root and tuber crop farming system: diversity, complexity and productivity potential	182
SAMUEL ADJEI-NSIAH, GODWIN ASUMUGHA, EMMANUEL NJUKWE AND MALACHY AKORODA	
7 The cereal-root crop mixed farming system: a potential bread basket transitioning to sustainable intensification	214
AMIR KASSAM, ERIC KUENEMAN, ROSEMARY LOTT, THEODOR FRIEDRICH, NEBAMBI LUTALADIO, DAVID NORMAN, MARTIN BWALYA, ANNE-SOPHIE POISOT AND SAIDI MKOMWA	
8 The highland mixed farming system of Africa: diversifying livelihoods in fragile ecosystems	248
TILAHUN AMEDE AND MULUGETA LEMENIH	
9 The tree crop farming system: stagnation, innovation and forest degradation	282
JIM GOCKOWSKI	
10 The pastoral farming system: balancing between tradition and transition	318
JAN DE LEEUW, PHILIP OSANO, MOHAMMED SAID, AUGUSTINE AYANTUNDE, SIKHALAZO DUBE, CONSTANCE NEELY, ANTON VRIELING, PHILIP THORNTON AND POLLY ERICKSEN	
11 The fish-based farming system: maintaining ecosystem health and flexible livelihood portfolios	354
OLIVIER HAMERLYNCK, WANJA DOROTHY NYINGI, JEAN-LUC PAUL AND STÉPHANIE DUVAIL	
12 The forest-based farming system: highly diverse, annual and perennial systems under threat	393
STEFAN HAUSER, LINDSEY NORGROVE, ERIC TOLLENS, CHRISTIAN NOLTE, VALENTINA ROBIGLIO AND JIM GOCKOWSKI	
13 Large-scale irrigated farming system: the potential and challenges to improve food security, livelihoods and ecosystem management	423
TIMOTHY OLALEKAN WILLIAMS, JEAN-MARC FAURÈS, REGASSA NAMARA AND KATHERINE SNYDER	

14 The arid pastoral and oasis farming system: key centres for the development of trans-Saharan economies	450
MAHAMADOU CHAIBOU AND BERNARD BONNET	
15 Perennial mixed and island farming systems: exploiting synergies for maximum system productivity	482
MAXWELL MUDHARA, JAN LOMBARD, ANTHONY PALMER AND JOHN DIXON	
16 Urban and peri-urban farming systems: feeding cities and enhancing resilience	504
DIANA LEE-SMITH, GORDON PRAIN, OLUFUNKE COFIE, RENÉ VAN VEENHUIZEN AND NANCY KARANJA	
 PART III	
Synthesis and conclusions	533
17 Farming and food systems potentials	535
JOHN DIXON, JEAN-MARC BOFFA, TIMOTHY OLALEKAN WILLIAMS, JAN DE LEEUW, GÜNTHER FISCHER AND HARRIJ VAN VELTHUIZEN	
18 Ways forward: strategies for effective science, investments and policies for African farming and food systems	562
JOHN DIXON, DENNIS GARRITY, GEORGE MBURATHI, JEAN-MARC BOFFA, TILAHUN AMEDE AND TIMOTHY OLALEKAN WILLIAMS	
19 Conclusions: implementation of the farming systems approach for African food security	589
DENNIS GARRITY, JOHN DIXON, GEORGE MBURATHI, TIMOTHY OLALEKAN WILLIAMS AND TILAHUN AMEDE	
 <i>Index</i>	 599

Figures

1.1	The farming systems of Africa	12
1.2	Farm household decision making	16
2.1	Approach to farming systems identification and characterization	44
2.2	Maps of farming systems of Africa in 2000 and 2015	45
2.3	Map of total population density in Africa in 2015	47
2.4	Distribution of length of growing periods by farming system (%) in sub-Saharan Africa	48
2.5	Map of 30-day interval LGP	49
2.6	Remotely sensed (1981–2011) derived average 30-day length of growing season data for two growing seasons	50
2.7	Relative distribution of 30-day LGP intervals in selected farming systems	50
2.8	Travel time to town with population of 50,000 in selected farming systems	52
2.9	Map of travel time to 50,000 town and farming systems boundaries	53
3.1	The maize mixed farming system and subsystems	69
3.2	A field day in Kandeu, Central Malawi	71
3.3	Direct seeding of maize with animal drawn seeder, Kisilo village, Njombe district, Tanzania	78
3.4	Average farm size trends in SIMLESA countries of eastern and southern Africa	80
3.5	Relative importance of constraints to maize yield in the maize mixed system	87
3.6	Maize fertilizer response from Nsipe, Ntcheu district, in Central Malawi	88
3.7	Relative suitability of main crops to the maize mixed system	89
3.8	Striga species limit yields in maize fields	95
3.9	Smallholder farmer demand constraints in the maize seed sector	96
4.1	Map of the agropastoral farming system in Africa	107
4.2	Cattle in the southeastern lowveld of Zimbabwe Limpopo Valley	108
4.3	Supplementary dry season feeding of velvet bean and maize	113
4.4	Variability of annual rainfall in the Sahel between 1900 and 2010	121
4.5	Crop residues stored away from livestock	127

4.6	Dwarf SV2 sorghum variety	132
4.7	Cattle grazing maize stover near homestead, Nkayi district, Zimbabwe	133
4.8	Family field of velvet bean (<i>Mucuna</i> spp.)	136
5.1	Map of the highland perennial farming subsystems	150
5.2	Fragmented fields on densely cultivated hillsides on Lake Kivu shores in Gisenyi, Rwanda	157
5.3	Large-scale coffee plantation on Mount Kilimanjaro, Arusha area, Tanzania	160
5.4	Industrial robusta coffee plantation intercropped with fast-growing leguminous trees in Mubende, Uganda	169
5.5	Herfindahl indices of farming system diversification by agroecological zone in Kenya	170
5.6	Coffee washing at COOPAC's Nyamwenda washing station in Gisenyi, Rwanda	174
5.7	Agricultural landscapes around Jimma, Oromya region, Ethiopia	176
6.1	Relative importance of food crops by harvested area in the root and tuber crop farming system	186
6.2	Maize-cassava intercropping system in Ibadan, southwestern Nigeria	187
6.3	Women processing cassava	193
6.4	Extent of the root and tuber crop farming subsystems in Africa	194
6.5	Rainfed suitability profiles for the root and tuber crop farming system	207
7.1	Map of the cereal-root crop mixed farming system and subsystems	216
7.2	Fulani herder settled in southwest Burkina Faso	221
7.3	A soybean and maize plot in southwestern Burkina Faso under no-till management	222
7.4	Household compound in Karaba area, near Bobo Dioulasso, Burkina Faso	226
7.5	Influence of farming practice on cotton yield in west Africa, 2010–2011	234
7.6	Cassava farmer from Oyo State, Nigeria	237
7.7	Private-sector cassava processing for fermentation of ethanol	242
8.1	Location of the highland mixed farming system and its four subsystems in Africa	250
8.2	Coffee agroforestry field planted in maize with banana and scattered fruit trees, western region, Cameroon	253
8.3	Livestock-cereal subsystem in the northern Ethiopian highlands	255
8.4	Northern Ethiopian highland landscape of the wheat-pulse subsystem	256
8.5	Maize-based subsystem in central Ethiopian highlands	257
8.6	Herder with mixed herd grazing at the Lets'eng-la-Letsie Ramsar Wetland site, Lesotho	258
9.1	Location of the tree crop farming system in Africa	284
9.2	Distribution of household area planted to cocoa in the cocoa belt of west Africa	288

xii *Figures*

9.3	A farmer in his shaded cocoa plantation, Nkhol Bang village, Central Region, Cameroon	289
9.4	<i>Phytophthora megakarya</i> rot on cocoa pods, Ozom, Lékié Department, Cameroon	290
9.5	Total monthly crop production labour requirements for men and women in southern Cameroon	292
9.6	Cocoa bean extraction after the cocoa pod harvest	292
9.7	Proportion of staple food crop consumption procured from food markets versus home production for four farm size categories in Bia District, Ghana	296
9.8	Newly planted cocoa associated with cassava and plantain as temporary shade, in Bia District, Ghana	296
9.9	Relative investment costs for a \$45 million industrial plantation subsystem of 6000 ha, employing 1,400 workers	298
9.10	Change in robusta coffee production and acreage in west Africa and Vietnam, 1980–2012	301
9.11	Monthly average global prices for selected tree crop commodities, 1991–2012	302
9.12	Yield-age profile of cocoa tree stocks in the Bia District, Ghana	308
10.1	The pastoral farming system and subsystems	319
10.2	Sahelian transhumance routes across farming systems	322
10.3	Fulani boy in Niger herds his family animals	324
10.4	Spatial variation in livestock stocking rate in Kenya, late 1970s to late 1990s	328
10.5	Beneficiary of Takaful insurance payout in Wajir, northern Kenya	329
10.6	Distribution of lands with coefficient of variation of annual rainfall higher and lower than 33%	331
10.7	Change in length of growing season across Sub-Saharan Africa	339
10.8	Game farming business operation in Eastern Cape, South Africa	341
11.1	The basic production unit of sub-Saharan fishers	356
11.2	Map of the fish-based farming subsystems	357
11.3	Map of the fish-based farming system in sub-Saharan Africa	360
11.4	Coral reef fishing operation using traditional baskets that are set close inshore, Tanga, Tanzania	361
11.5	High density of reef fishes in Mafia Island Marine Park, Tanzania	362
11.6	The settlement of Guet N'dar in the Senegal River Delta	364
11.7	Migrating Bozo fishers in the Faguibine system in Mali	367
11.8	Floodplain farming in Rufiji, Tanzania	368
11.9	Harvesting of tidal rice in the Tana Delta, Kenya	370
11.10	Migrating (often transnational) groups of fishers funded by city-based investors	372
11.11	Fishing a seasonal pond in proximity to the floodplain farm in Rufiji, Tanzania	375
11.12	Collective fisheries in the floodplain of the Niger River in Guinea	378

12.1	The forest-based farming system in Africa	395
12.2	Bush or early succession clearing	395
12.3	Farmer planting small seeded crops (maize, groundnut) where little woody residue is left	397
12.4	A simplified illustration of the fallow-crop dynamic for two major FBFS phases, southern Cameroon	398
12.5	A rain shelter in forest south of Kikwit in Bandundu province, DRC	399
12.6	Satellite image of the IITA forest margins benchmark area in southern Cameroon	400
12.7	Ongoing clearing along a road at Yamgambi, Province Orientale, DRC	401
12.8	Production of cassava, maize, paddy rice and cocoa bean crops in Cameroon, Republic of Congo, Equatorial Guinea and DRC	408
12.9	Scenarios in the hypothetical relationship between fallow length and soil fertility	409
12.10	Initial cropping of plantain after forest removal	413
12.11	A new field of maize in southern Cameroon	416
13.1	Markala dam, large-scale irrigation infrastructure, Office du Niger	425
13.2	Distribution of large-scale irrigated farming system in Africa	427
13.3	Irrigated rice farming, Karfiguela irrigation scheme, Burkina Faso	431
13.4	Small-scale irrigation, East Dangbe district, Ghana	440
13.5	Oxen ploughing, Karfiguela irrigation scheme, Burkina Faso	442
14.1	Map of the arid pastoral and oasis farming system in Africa	452
14.2	Cereal cropping in oasis depressions of Goudoumaria, Niger	453
14.3	Map of trans-Saharan routes and oases	453
14.4	Activities and interactions in the arid pastoral and oasis farming system, Kawar oasis, Niger	455
14.5	Salt water pool in the oasis of Argui in Kawar, Niger	458
14.6	Map of oases in Bilma department, Niger	458
14.7	Oasis irrigation system, Niger	459
14.8	Large Saharan depression threatened by sand accumulation	464
15.1	Map of the mixed perennial farming system and its three subsystems	484
15.2	Sugarcane fields at different development stages, KwaZulu-Natal, South Africa	486
15.3	Aerial view of deciduous fruit orchards, Koue Bokkeveld area of Ceres district, South Africa	487
15.4	Wine grape vineyard under drip irrigation in Stellenbosch district, South Africa	489
15.5	Traditional medium-density olive-based agroecosystem in Agourai, Meknès Province in Morocco	490
15.6	Harvesting of apples in the Elgin district, South Africa	491
15.7	Young trees bearing Golden Delicious apples, Koue Bokkeveld area of Ceres district, South Africa	495
16.1	Open-space rainfed farming system in Kampala, Uganda	508
16.2	Open space irrigated crop production, Addis Ababa	509

xiv *Figures*

16.3	Sylvia Oluoch's backyard crop-livestock farm	511
16.4	Ruth Wanyoike weeding vegetables irrigated using wastewater, Kahawa Soweto, Nairobi, Kenya	518
16.5	Open space irrigated farming in downtown Kampala, Uganda	521
16.6	Open space irrigated crop production in Cape Town, South Africa	524
18.1	Farming systems of Africa in 2000 and 2015	566
18.2	Ethiopian farming systems, 2015	570

Tables

1.1	Food security, economic and demographic characteristics by development region	6
1.2	Dietary energy and protein availability by food group	7
1.3	Sources of dietary energy and protein by agricultural commodities	8
1.4	Key characteristics of African farming systems	14
1.5	Principal drivers and trends in farming system development	20
1.6	Trends in population and food security in sub-Saharan Africa compared with the world	22
1.7	Trends in land use in Africa	24
1.8	Trends in livestock and poultry populations in sub-Saharan Africa	25
1.9	Trends in livestock and poultry productivity in Africa and globally	28
1.10	Examples of strategic interventions focused on household pathways	34
2.1	Evolution of the farming systems approach	40
2.2	Access to agricultural services for African farming systems	51
2.3	Key characteristics of 2015 African farming systems	54
2.4	Data source and estimation methods for basic farming system data tables	55
2.5	Major data sources consulted for system characterization	59
2.6	Selected major supporting documents, administrative statistics and assessment reports	62
2.7	Selected list of spatial data reviewed and experts consulted for system characterization in addition to chapter authors	63
3.1	Basic system data (2015): maize mixed farming system	70
3.2	Average farm household enterprise pattern: maize mixed farming system	72
3.3	Key characteristics of the subsystems	74
3.4	Productivities and yield gaps of major crops	87
3.5	Main crop expansion and productivity growth rates	91
3.6	Relative importance of household livelihood improvement strategies	92
3.7	Adoption of sustainable intensification practices	94
3.8	Summary of strategic priorities for the maize mixed system	98
4.1	Basic system data (2015): agropastoral farming system in Africa	107

4.2	Hausa household socioeconomic groups in Tessaoua department, Niger	111
4.3	Basic characteristics of agropastoral subsystems, 2015	115
4.4	Summary of trends and drivers in the agropastoral farming system	118
4.5	Relative importance of household livelihood improvement strategies	135
4.6	Summary of strategic interventions for the agropastoral farming system	136
5.1	Basic system data (2015): highland perennial farming system	151
5.2	Hectares of arable land per person in agriculture (ten-year average) in selected countries	152
5.3	Arable land per person in the six highland perennial subsystems (ha/person)	153
5.4	Changes in grazing systems for smallholder dairy production, 1977–1996, Kiambu district, Kenyan highlands	154
5.5	Farm size distribution in the Ethiopian highlands by region, 2011–2012	156
5.6	Market-driven intensification pathways in highland perennial farming subsystems	163
5.7	Farm income based on surveys in Kenya, Uganda and Ethiopia, 2004–2006	164
5.8	Comparison of diversification in central and western highlands of Kenya	166
5.9	Farm-market price spreads for maize in Kenya and Uganda	168
5.10	Relative importance of household livelihood improvement in the highland perennial subsystems	176
5.11	Relative importance of household livelihood improvement strategies	177
6.1	Basic system data (2015): root and tuber crop farming system	184
6.2	Key characteristics of the root and tuber crop farming subsystems	195
6.3	Summary of trends and drivers in the root and tuber crop farming system	201
6.4	Production and harvested area of major crops in the root and tuber crop farming system	202
6.5	Common system performance indicators: root and tuber crop farming system	203
6.6	Relative importance of poverty escape strategies for poor and non-poor farm households	204
6.7	Summary of strategic interventions for the root and tuber crop farming system	209
7.1	Basic system data (2015): cereal-root crop mixed farming system	217
7.2	Farming system features at the household level	226
7.3	Relative importance of household livelihood improvement strategies	243
8.1	Basic system data (2015): highland mixed farming system	251
8.2	Key drivers of change, trends and implications for highland mixed farming system	260

8.3	Average yield of key cereal and legume species grown in highland mixed farming system in Ethiopia	268
8.4	Qualitative comparison of highland mixed subsystems' performance	269
8.5	Common performance indicators: highland mixed farming system	270
8.6	Relative importance of household livelihood improvement strategies	272
9.1	Basic system data (2015): tree crop farming system	285
9.2	Urban and rural population size, population growth rates, rural density estimates in tree crop farming system regions	286
9.3	Demographic characteristics of household heads in the cocoa-based forest rent subsystem	287
9.4	Average land and labour endowments of cocoa-based forest rent subsystems	288
9.5	Adoption of improved versus unimproved cocoa planting material in cocoa-based forest rent subsystems	290
9.6	Percentage of producers using agrochemicals on cocoa and food production systems in the cocoa-based forest rent farming system	291
9.7	Frequency of tool ownership among FRS households by size of cocoa planting	291
9.8	Frequency of chemical innovation by size of cocoa holding in the western region of Ghana, 2011	295
9.9	Intensity of fertilizer application as a linear function of farm size in the cocoa SIS	295
9.10	Population densities of the three principal farming systems of the humid low land tropics in 2010	299
9.11	Land ownership by mode of acquisition and gender, cocoa belt of west and central Africa	306
9.12	Costs and returns per hectare for cocoa FRS and SIS enterprises based on 2009 prices	308
9.13	Partial productivity measures for cocoa producers across west Africa	309
9.14	Relative importance of household livelihood improvement strategies	311
10.1	Basic system data (2015): pastoral farming system	320
10.2	Key features of pastoral management systems in sub-Saharan Africa	323
10.3	Population growth rate in the pastoral farming system for various groups	327
10.4	Human populations and incomes by livestock holdings per capita for northern and southern Kenyan pastoral areas	330
10.5	Performance of pastoral farming subsystems in terms of productivity, sustainability and human development outcomes	338
10.6	Productivity of cattle, goats and sheep (shoats) and dairy in the pastoral system in eastern Africa	340
10.7	Relative importance of household livelihood improvement strategies	344
10.8	Relative importance of five poverty escape pathways in the pastoral system	345

10.9	Summary of the strategic priorities for agricultural transformation in the pastoral farming system	346
11.1	Basic system data (2015): fish-based farming system	359
11.2	Main African river basins and their floodplain systems with an estimate of their extent in km ²	366
11.3	Summary of drivers, trends and implications for the fish-based farming system	379
11.4	Strategic priorities for the fish-based farming system	382
11.5	Relative importance of household livelihood improvement strategies	384
12.1	Basic system data (2015): forest-based farming system	394
12.2	Percentage of population earning less than US\$1.25 and US\$2.00 per day	399
12.3	Characteristics of the two subsystems of the FBFS	402
12.4	Total and relative production of major crops in the FBFS, and the range of yields	407
12.5	Relative importance of household livelihood improvement strategies	411
13.1	A typology of irrigated farming subsystems in sub-Saharan Africa based on management and command area	425
13.2	Basic system data (2015): large-scale irrigated farming system	427
13.3	Evolution of the large-scale irrigated farming system (LSIFS) in response to various drivers	435
13.4	Yields and returns in large-scale rice irrigation schemes in five sub-Saharan African countries	436
13.5	Relative importance of household livelihood improvement strategies in sub-Saharan Africa	442
13.6	Summary of strategic interventions for LSIFS	445
14.1	Basic system data (2015): arid pastoral and oasis farming system	454
14.2	Relative importance of household livelihood improvement strategies	469
14.3	Summary of strategic interventions for the arid pastoral and oasis farming system	475
14.4	Intervention strategies according to the characteristics of selected arid pastoral and oasis sites	476
15.1	Basic system data (2015): perennial mixed farming system	485
15.2	Relative importance of household livelihood improvement strategies	496
15.3	Basic system data (2015): island farming system	499
15.4	Relative importance of household livelihood improvement strategies	500
16.1	Proportion of households engaged in UPA in some African towns and cities	506
16.2	Structure and characteristics of UPUFS subsystems	508
16.3	Drivers of farming system evolution	517
16.4	Overall performance of UPUFS system and subsystems	517
16.5	Area of irrigated open space in selected cities of west Africa	519

16.6	Potential and relative importance of UPUFS for poverty reduction	523
16.7	Relative importance of household livelihood improvement strategies	523
16.8	Summary of interventions for urban and peri-urban farming system	528
17.1	Summary characteristics of farm households by farming systems, 2015	537
17.2	Distribution of people, land, livestock and cultivated area across African farming systems, 2015	540
17.3	Characterization of African farming systems by access to resources and agricultural services	542
17.4	Grouping of African farming systems by type of leading enterprise	543
17.5	Grouping of African farming systems into categories by food security potential by 2030	544
17.6	Relative importance of household strategies by farming system for escape from extreme poverty, 2015	552
17.7	Relative importance of pathways for poverty escape by food security potential for poor households, 2015	554
17.8	Pressure on resources categorized by farming system food security potential	559
18.1	Distribution of selected adapted crops by farming systems	571
18.2	Common farm household strategies for poor and less-poor by food security potential	572
18.3	Key thrusts and elements of national and regional strategies for food and nutrition security	573

Boxes

1.1	Definition of a farming system	10
3.1	Typical smallholder farm household profile	73
3.2	The law of unintended consequences in policy	86
3.3	The Malawi universal starter pack	93
3.4	Seed supply systems	97
4.1	A typical household in semi-arid Zimbabwe	117
4.2	Main factors generating feelings of disenfranchisement among Sahelian youth	120
4.3	Second-generation research-extension issues in sorghum technology introduction in Mali	126
4.4	An integrated market-oriented approach to scaling up intensive sorghum and millet production	140
6.1	A typical household of the forest-savannah transitional zone of the root and tuber crop farming system, Ghana	191
6.2	A typical household of the root and tuber crop farming system in south-eastern Nigeria	192
6.3	Improving access to market	208
7.1	Intercropping and plant phenology	219
7.2	Crop-livestock integration and village enterprises	230
8.1	A typical household in the livestock-cereal subsystem in the northern Ethiopian highlands	254
8.2	A typical household in the wheat-pulse subsystem in the northern Ethiopian highlands	256
8.3	A typical household in the highland maize-based subsystem in the central Ethiopian highlands	259
8.4	Farm intensification through facilitating organic honey production in livestock-cereal subsystem	271
9.1	Ethnicity, migrant labour and farm size in the cocoa belt of Côte d'Ivoire	293
10.1	Transhumance in the Sahel	321
10.2	A pastoral household in Masailand	323
10.3	A Fulani household in the Sahel	325
10.4	Population growth as a driver of change	327
10.5	Land use as a driver of change in the Sahel	332

10.6	Community conservancies as innovations for land and wildlife management in Kenya and Namibia	336
11.1	Typical smallholder farm household profile in the fish-based farming system	358
11.2	Just add water: recession agriculture of Lake Faguibine in Mali	369
11.3	The restoration of the Senegal River Delta in Mauritania: a success story	374
11.4	A laudable attempt at regional integration and bottom-up planning in West Africa	386
13.1	A typical household in large-scale irrigated farming system	426
13.2	Challenges and emerging opportunities in the Gezira LSIFS	428
14.1	The Kawar oasis in the heart of the Nigerien Sahara	457
14.2	A typical household in the oasis component of the farming system	460
14.3	Livestock management in the oasis and surrounding arid pastoral plateaux in the Kawar oasis	461
16.1	A household typical of the UPUFS backyard subsystem	511
16.2	A household typical of the UPUFS open space subsystem (high density slum)	512
16.3	Key challenge	512
16.4	Potential for improved performance through managing municipal nutrient flows	520
16.5	Support for urban farming in West African cities	526
16.6	Extension for urban farmers: Nairobi and Environs Food Security, Agriculture and Livestock Forum (NEFSALF)	526
18.1	Engines of agricultural development in Africa: maize mixed and cereal-root crop mixed farming systems	577
18.2	Micro and small enterprises	578
18.3	Innovation platforms	581
18.4	Distributed bioenergy and renewables production	583
18.5	Sustainable and resilient intensification	584
18.6	Targeting climate-smart agriculture	585

Contributors

A. Lead and contributing authors (chapter lead authors underlined)

Samuel Adjei-Nsiah, Country Coordinator, N2Africa Ghana, International Institute of Tropical Agriculture, Tamale, Ghana; **Malachy Akoroda**, Agronomist, Director General, Cocoa Research Institute of Nigeria, Ibadan, Nigeria; **Tilahun Amede**, Principal Scientist, International Crops Research Institute for Semi-arid Tropics, Nairobi, Kenya; **Godwin Asumugha**, Agricultural Economist, National Root Crops Research Institute, Umudike, Nigeria; **Christopher M. Auricht**, Spatial data analyst, Auricht Projects, Brighton, South Australia; **Augustine Ayantunde**, Animal Scientist, People Livestock Environment, International Livestock Research Institute, Niamey, Niger; **Minamba Bagayoko**, Science du Sol et Nutrition des plantes, Gestion des Ressources Naturelles, Directeur de Recherche, Coordinateur du Centre National de Spécialisation sur le Riz, Institut d'Economie Rurale, Mali; **Malcolm Blackie**, Agricultural Economist, BT Associates, UK; **Jean-Marc Boffa**, Director, Terra Sana Projects and Associate Fellow, World Agroforestry Centre, Nairobi, Kenya; **Bernard Bonnet**, Department Head, Institut de Recherches et d'Applications des Méthodes de Développement, Montpellier, France; **Martin Bwalya**, Head of Comprehensive Africa Agriculture Development Programme under the New Partnership for Africa's Development Planning and Coordinating Agency, Johannesburg, South Africa; **Mahamadou Chaibou**, Maître de Conférences, Faculté d'Agronomie, Université Abdou Moumouni, Niamey, Niger; **Olufunke Cofie**, Senior Researcher, International Water Management Institute, Accra, Ghana; **John Dixon**, Principal Adviser, Research & Research Program Manager, Cropping Systems and Economics, Australian Centre for International Agricultural Research, Canberra, Australia; **Sikhalazo Dube**, Regional Representative to Southern Africa, International Livestock Research Institute, Harare, Zimbabwe; **Stéphanie Duvail**, Geographer, Institut de Recherche pour le Développement, Nairobi, Kenya; **Adama Ekberg Coulibaly**, Chief, Agriculture, Food security and Land Section, Regional Integration and Trade Division, United Nations Economic Commission for Africa, Addis Ababa, Ethiopia; **Medhat El-Helepi**, Economic Affairs Officer, Food Security, Agriculture and Land Section, Regional Integration and Trade Division, United Nations Economic Commission for Africa, Addis Ababa, Ethiopia; **Polly Ericksen**, Programme Leader, Livestock Systems and Environment, International Livestock Research Institute, Nairobi, Kenya; **Jean-Marc Faurès**, Senior Officer, Water Resources Management, Land and Water Management Division, Food and Agriculture Organization, Rome, Italy; **Günther Fischer**, Senior Research Scholar, Water Research Program, International Institute for Applied Systems

Analysis, Laxenburg, Austria; **Theodor Friedrich**, FAO Representative to Cuba, Food and Agriculture Organization, Havana, Cuba; **Dennis Garrity**, Drylands Ambassador, UN Convention to Combat Desertification and Senior Fellow, World Agroforestry Centre, Nairobi, Kenya; **Jim Gockowski**, Agricultural Economist, International Institute of Tropical Agriculture, Ibadan, Nigeria **Olivier Hamerlynck**, Senior Research Affiliate, Kenya Wetlands Biodiversity Research Team, National Museums of Kenya, Nairobi, Kenya; **Stefan Hauser**, Soil Scientist, International Institute of Tropical Agriculture, Ibadan, Nigeria; **Pierre Hiernaux**, Geoscience Environment Toulouse (GET), Observatoire Midi-Pyrénées, Toulouse, France; **Nancy Karanja**, Professor of Soil Ecology, University of Nairobi, Nairobi, Kenya; **Amir Kassam**, Agricultural Ecologist, Senior Consultant for the Food and Agriculture Organization, Rome, Italy; **Eric Kueneman**, Director, Kueneman Consultancy, Visiting Scholar, Department of Plant Sciences University of California Davis, West Sacramento, California, USA; **Diana Lee-Smith**, Associate, Mazingira Institute, Nairobi, Kenya; **Jan de Leeuw**, Senior Scientist, ISRIC World Soil Information, Wageningen, The Netherlands; **Mulugeta Lemenih**, Head, Forestry and Natural Resources Management, Farm Africa, Addis Ababa, Ethiopia; **Jan Lombard**, Senior Lecturer, Department of Agricultural Economics, University of Stellenbosch, Stellenbosch, South Africa; **Rosemary Lott**, Vegetation Connections, Canberra, Australia; **NeBambi Lutaladio**, Associate Professor, Plant Production and Protection Department, Faculty of Agricultural Science, University of Kinshasa, and Deputy Director General, Institut National pour l'Etude et la Recherche Agronomiques, Kinshasa, Democratic Republic of Congo; **John Lynam**, Board Chair, World Agroforestry Centre, Nairobi, Kenya; **George Mburathi**, Independent Consultant, Nairobi, Kenya; **Mulugetta Mekuria**, SIMLESA Program Leader and CIMMYT Representative, Southern Africa Regional Office, International Maize and Wheat Improvement Center, Harare, Zimbabwe; **Saidi Mkomwa**, Executive Secretary, African Conservation Tillage Network, Nairobi, Kenya; **Maxwell Mudhara**, Lecturer, School of Agricultural, Earth and Environmental Sciences, University of KwaZulu-Natal, Pietermaritzburg, South Africa; **Regassa Namara**, Senior Water Resources Economist, Sector of Water, The World Bank, Washington, DC, USA; **Shadreck Ncube**, Ruminant Nutrition, Head of Institute, Matopos Research Institute, Bulawayo, Zimbabwe; **Constance Neely**, Senior Advisor for Research, Practice and Policy Integration, World Agroforestry Centre, Nairobi, Kenya; Emmanuel Njukwe, Country Representative, IITA, Burundi; **Christian Nolte**, Independent Consultant, Geneva, Switzerland; **Lindsey Norgrove**, Professor, School of Agricultural, Forest and Food Sciences, Bern University of Applied Sciences, Zollikofen, Switzerland; **David Norman**, Professor Emeritus, Department of Agricultural Economics, Kansas State University, Kansas, USA; **Justice Nyamangara**, Deputy Vice Chancellor, Chinhoyi University of Technology, Chinhoyi, Zimbabwe; **Wanja Dorothy Nyingi**, Head, Ichthyology Section, National Museums of Kenya, Nairobi, Kenya; **Timothy Olalekan Williams**, Regional Director for Africa, International Water Management Institute, Accra, Ghana; **Philip Osano**, Research Fellow, Water, Land and Ecosystem Services, Stockholm Environmental Institute Africa, Nairobi, Kenya; **Anthony Palmer**, Specialist Scientist, Animal Production Institute, Agricultural Research Council, Grahamstown, South Africa; **Jean-Luc Paul**, Anthropologist, Senior Researcher, Institut des Mondes Africains, Pointe-à-Pitre, Guadeloupe; **Anne-Sophie Poisot**, Project Coordinator, Plant Production and Protection Division, Food and Agriculture Organization, Rome, Italy; **Gordon Prain**, Senior Scientist, Social and Health Sciences, International Potato Center, Lima, Peru;

Valentina Robiglio, Landscape Ecologist, World Agroforestry Centre, Lima, Peru; **Joseph Rusike**, Economist, International Institute of Tropical Agriculture, Dar-es-Salam, Tanzania; **Mohammed Said**, Associate, Institute of Climate Change and Adaptation, University of Nairobi, Nairobi, Kenya; **John Sanders**, Professor, Agricultural Economics, Purdue University, West Lafayette, Indiana, USA; **Sieglinde Snapp**, Professor, Soils and Cropping Systems Ecologist, Department of Plant, Soil and Microbial Sciences, Michigan State University, East Lansing, Michigan, USA; **Katherine Snyder**, Senior Social Scientist, Policy, Institutions and Gender, International Center for Tropical Agriculture, Nairobi, Kenya; **Sibiri Jean-Baptiste Taonda**, Maître de Recherche en Sciences agronomiques (CAMES), Coordonnateur du Projet SAPEP-Burkina, Ministère de l'Enseignement Supérieur, de la Recherche Scientifique et de l'Innovation, Ouagadougou, Burkina Faso; **Philip Thornton**, Principal Scientist, International Livestock Research Institute, Edinburgh, UK; **Eric Tollens**, Emeritus Professor, Centre for Bio-Economics, Faculty of Bioscience Engineering, Catholic University of Leuven, Leuven, Belgium; **René van Veenhuizen**, Senior Programme Officer Urban Agriculture, RUAF Foundation, Leusden, The Netherlands; **Harrij van Velthuizen**, Senior Research Scholar, Water Research Program, International Institute for Applied Systems Analysis, Laxenburg, Austria; **Anton Vrieling**, Assistant Professor, Faculty of Geo-Information Science and Earth Observation (ITC), University of Twente, Enschede, The Netherlands.

B. Chapter reviewers

Bruno Barbier, Research Fellow, G-eau Research Unit, Centre de Coopération Internationale en Recherche Agronomique pour le Développement, Dakar, Senegal; **Paula Bramel**, Scientific Advisor, Global Crop Diversity Trust, Bonn, Germany; **Jonathan Davies**, Coordinator, Global Drylands Programme, International Union for Conservation of Nature, Nairobi, Kenya; **Hubert de Bon**, Agronomist, HortSys Research Unit, Centre de Coopération Internationale en Recherche Agronomique pour le Développement, Montpellier, France; **Ousmane Djibo**, team leader GIZ Sector Project Agriculture Policy and Food security; **Pay Drechsel**, Theme Leader, International Water Management Institute, Colombo, Sri Lanka; **Dominique Endamana**, Program Officer, Regional Forest Program for Central and West Africa, International Union for Conservation of Nature, Yaoundé, Cameroon; **Divine Foundjem-Tita**, Market Scientist, World Agroforestry Centre, Yaounde, Cameroon; **Francis Gichuki**, Senior Lecturer, Environmental and Biosystems Engineering Department, University of Nairobi, Nairobi, Kenya; **Ken E. Giller**, Professor of Plant Production Systems, Wageningen University, Wageningen, The Netherlands; **Munir A. Hanjra**, Economist, Agricultural Water Management, International Water Management Institute, Pretoria, South Africa; **Wolf D. Hartmann**, Coordinator, GOPA Consultants/Ministerio do Meio Ambiente, Brasília, Brazil; **Heike Höffler**, team leader GIZ Sector Project Agricultural Trade, Agribusiness, Agricultural Finance; **Irene Hoffmann**, Secretary, Commission on Genetic Resources for Food and Agriculture, Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, Rome, Italy; **Habtemariam Kassa**, Senior Scientist, Forests and Human Well-Being Research Team, Center for International Forestry Research, Addis Ababa, Ethiopia; **Patrice Levang**, Director of Research, Institut de Recherche pour le Développement, Montpellier, France; **Thilak Mallawaarachchi**, Principal

Research Fellow, Risk and Sustainable Management Group, School of Economics, University of Queensland, Brisbane, Australia; **Modesta Medard Ntara**, Senior Social Scientist and Environmentalist, Tanzania Fisheries Research Institute, Mwanza, Tanzania; **Mick S. Mwala**, Dean, School of Agricultural Sciences, University of Zambia, Lusaka, Zambia; **Lucien Nomo Bidzanga**, Coordonnateur, Systèmes de Production, Economie et Sociologie Rurales, Institut de Recherche Agricole pour le Développement, N’Kolbisson, Cameroon; **Remi Nomo-Womdim**, Representative in Cabo Verde, Food and Agriculture Organization, Praia, Cabo Verde; **Pheneas Ntawuruhunga**, Scientist, Cassava Breeder, International Institute of Tropical Agriculture, Lusaka, Zambia; **Thomas Ochuodho**, Assistant Professor, University of Kentucky, Lexington, USA; **Michael Phillips**, Director of Aquaculture and Fisheries Science, WorldFish, Penang, Malaysia; **Mark Prein**, team leader GIZ Sector Project Sustainable Fisheries and Aquaculture; **Ingrid Prem**, team leader GIZ Sector Project Sustainable Agriculture; **Mongi Sghaier**, Professor, Arid Region Institute, Medenine, Tunisia; **Anneke Trux**, team leader GIZ Global Program Land; **Bernard Vanlauwe**, R4D Director, International Institute of Tropical Agriculture, Central Africa, Nairobi, Kenya; **Jean-Philippe Venot**, Senior Researcher, Institut de Recherche pour le Développement, Montpellier, France; **Ketema Tilahun Zekeke**, Lecturer, Irrigation and Water Management, Charles Sturt University, Wagga Wagga, Australia.

C. Whole manuscript reviewers

Tsedeke Abate, Drought Tolerant Maize for Africa Project Leader, International Maize and Wheat Improvement Center, Nairobi, Kenya; **Caterina Batello**, Team Leader, Agriculture Department, Food and Agriculture Organization; **Simeon Ehui**, Practice Manager, Agriculture Global Practice, The World Bank; **Siboniso Moyo**, Representative of the Director General to Ethiopia, and Program Leader, Animal Science for Sustainable Productivity, International Livestock Research Institute, Addis Ababa, Ethiopia; **Ravi Prabhu**, Deputy Director General Research, World Agroforestry Centre, Nairobi, Kenya; **Mandivamba Rukuni**, Director BEAT Doctoral Academy, Harare, Zimbabwe; **Fergus Sinclair**, Science Domain Leader, World Agroforestry Centre, Nairobi, Kenya.

D. Participants at design and review workshops

Third Review Workshop: Expert Group Meeting on Farming Systems in Africa convened by UNECA at ICRAF, Nairobi, Kenya

The 23 participants included many chapter authors and book editors, and in addition: **Ahmed Abdelwhab M. Abdelhafez**, Associate Professor, Faculty of Agriculture, Ain Shams University, Cairo, Egypt; **Ayma Farid Abou-Hadid**, Professor Emeritus, Faculty of Agriculture, Ain Shams University, Cairo, Egypt; **Nassirou Ba**, Economic Affairs Officer, Food Security, Agriculture and Land Section, Regional Integration and Trade Division, United Nations Economic Commission for Africa, Addis Ababa, Ethiopia; **James Hansen**, Flagship 2 Leader, CGIAR Research Program on Climate Change, Agriculture and Food Security, Columbia University, New York, USA; **Kirigai Kamau**, Agribusiness & Private Sector Advisor, Ministry of Agriculture Livestock, and Fisheries, Nairobi, Kenya; **Stephen Karingi**, Director,

Regional Integration and Trade Division, United Nations Economic Commission for Africa, Addis Ababa, Ethiopia; **Lucy Nyirenda**, Head of Government Services, African Risk Capacity, Johannesburg, South Africa; **Ravi Prabhu**, Deputy Director General, Research, ICRAF, Nairobi, Kenya; **Zakary Rhissa**, Livestock Specialist and Independent Consultant, Niamey, Niger; **Mohamed Sadeck Boulahya**, Regional Advisor in Climate for Development, ClimDev Consult Africa, Toulouse, France; **Moussa Seck**, Chair, Pan African Agribusiness and Agro-industry Consortium, Dakar, Senegal; **Kees Cornelis J. Stigter**, Agrometeorologist, Agromet Vision & International Society for Agricultural Meteorology and Visiting/Affiliated Professor at African Universities and Indonesia, Bruchem, The Netherlands; **Henry Wamwayi**, Acting Senior Policy Officer Trade and Marketing Unit, African Union-Inter-African Bureau for Animal Resources, Nairobi, Kenya; **Cathy Watson**, Chief of Programme Development, ICRAF, Nairobi, Kenya.

Second Design Workshop for the Farming Systems Book, ICRAF, Nairobi, Kenya

The 33 participants included many chapter authors and book editors, and in addition: **Carlo Azzarri**, Senior Research Fellow, IFPRI; **Martin Bwalya**, Advisory Group, NEPAD; **Steve Franzel**, Advisory group member, ICRAF, Nairobi, Kenya; **Zhe Guo**, GIS Coordinator, IFPRI, Washington, DC, USA; **Rosemary Kande**, IT Specialist, ICRAF, Nairobi, Kenya; **Sid Mohan**, Intern, ICRAF, Nairobi, Kenya; **Alice Muller**, Intern, ICRAF, Nairobi, Kenya; **Frank Place**, IFPRI, Washington, DC, USA; **Martin Shem**, Advisory Group Member, Rwanda Agricultural Board, Kigali, Rwanda; **Stan Wood**, Senior Program Officer, Agricultural Development Program, Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation, Seattle, USA.

First Design Workshop for the Farming Systems Book, ICRAF, Nairobi, Kenya

The 22 participants included many chapter authors and book editors, and in addition: **Ermias Aynekulu**, Spatial Data Analyst, ICRAF, Nairobi, Kenya; **Steve Franzel**, Advisory group member, ICRAF, Nairobi, Kenya; **Rosemary Kande**, IT Specialist, ICRAF, Nairobi, Kenya; **Sid Mohan**, Intern, ICRAF, Nairobi, Kenya; **Martin Shem**, Advisory Group Member, Rwanda Agricultural Board, Kigali, Rwanda; **Marleen Schoemaker**, Intern, ICRAF, Nairobi, Kenya; **Stan Wood**, Senior Program Officer, Agricultural Development Program, Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation, Seattle, USA.

E. Other contributors

Other experts consulted for system characterization, trends and interventions:

Ward Anseeuw, Research Fellow, CIRAD; **Marie-Christine Cormier-Salem**, Senior Researcher, IRD; **Philippe Deygout**, Chargé de Programme, IRAM; **Mahamadou Gandah**, Country Representative, ICRISAT, Niamey, Niger; **Mario Herrero**, Chief Research Scientist and Office of the Chief Executive Science Leader, Commonwealth Scientific and Industrial Research Organisation; **Patrick Jagoret**, Agronomist, Centre de Coopération Internationale en Recherche Agronomique pour le Développement; **Bertus Kruger**, Technical Advisor, Rangeland Management, AGRA, Windhoek, Namibia; **Tendayi Maravanyika**, Country Coordinator, HarvestPlus Zimbabwe; **Frank Place**, Senior Research Fellow, IFPRI, Washington, DC, USA; **Francois Ruf**, Agro-economist, CIRAD; **Bekele Shiferaw**, Lead Evaluation Specialist and Cluster Coordinator for Agriculture, Environment and Climate Change, Independent Evaluation Group, World Bank Group.

Preface

Economic growth in Africa accelerated in the new millennium, enhancing confidence in the continent's future. Positive developments have taken place in the liberalization of trade and markets, in the strengthening of institutions and policies, and in investments in human and social capital and infrastructure. However, the growth has not trickled down to the large number of rural people experiencing chronic or crisis-driven hunger and poverty. Thus, Africa has had a larger proportion of extreme poor than any other region of the world.

Most of Africa's poor are rural and most rely largely on crops, livestock, trees and fish – along with off-farm income – for their livelihoods. The improvement of agriculture, particularly smallholder farming systems, is fundamental to overcoming the problems of rural poverty and lagging rural economies. The African rural development context is unique and diverse, in its geography, agro-ecology, history, politics and culture. National and regional decision makers face the challenge of identifying the best agricultural and rural development opportunities with the greatest impact on food security, livelihoods and economic growth. Experience has shown that policy and investment decisions must be better grounded in local context-specific analyses, incorporating multi-stakeholder and systems approaches focused on the livelihood strategies and opportunities of farm men and women. The value of targeting technologies and policies to different farming systems has been recognized in the Science Agenda of the Forum for Agricultural Research in Africa (FARA).

At the opening of the new millennium an FAO/World Bank analysis was published that examined rural development opportunities over the period from 2000 to 2015 from the perspective of farm households in major farming systems of the developing world (Dixon et al. 2001; www.fao.org/farmingsystems/). The analysis classified and mapped farming systems, including those of Africa, examined the drivers of change for the 2000–2015 period and identified strategic priorities for each system. This farming system framework and analysis has proved to be valuable for targeting and prioritizing agricultural research and development initiatives and has been used repeatedly – for example, by the InterAcademy Council report on Africa, the Millennium Villages Project, the CGIAR Collaborative Research Programs, and others.

Given the major changes in African agricultural opportunities, it was time for an update of the 2000 FAO/World Bank analysis of African farming systems looking forward from 2015 to 2030. Since 2000 the African population has increased by a third, dynamism has returned to many African economies and regional agricultural research and development organizations have generated and disseminated many new varieties

and practices – but farm household vulnerability and international market volatility have increased. The Australian Centre for International Agricultural Research supported an update, with assistance and guidance from the New Partnership for Africa's Development, the United Nations Economic Commission for Africa, the CGIAR, the World Bank, and the Food and Agricultural Organization.

The work was coordinated by the World Agroforestry Centre (ICRAF) in Nairobi. More than 60 scientists and development professionals, working in multi-disciplinary teams, assessed constraints, trends and strategic interventions in the 15 major farming systems across the continent. The analysis integrated key recent strategic reports and a wealth of expert knowledge and spatial data – including natural resource, production, infra-structural and nutritional information from FAO, World Bank, CGIAR, International Institute for Applied Systems Analysis (IIASA) and other sources.

The resulting book provides a unique systematic, forward-looking, compendium of continent-wide farming system assessments and databases for agribusiness, policy makers and science leaders. The document will undoubtedly be a fundamental guide for years to come for prioritization and targeting of public and private investments to deliver food and nutrition security and rural transformation in Africa.

Maria-Helena Semedo
Deputy Director General
Natural Resources Management
and Environment Department
Food and Agriculture Organization
of the United Nations

Andrew Campbell
Chief Executive Officer
Australian Centre for
International Agricultural Research

Juergen Voegelé
Senior Director
Agriculture Global Practice
The World Bank

Vera Songwe
Executive Secretary
United Nations Economic
Commission for Africa

Anthony Simons
Director General
World Agroforestry Centre

Ibrahim Assane Mayaki
Chief Executive Officer
New Partnership for Africa's Development

Acknowledgements

Sixty-six authors, working in multi-disciplinary analysis and writing teams, created the heart of this book. The authors, listed under Contributors, brought to the farming systems analysis the knowledge and data of a great many organizations, including African regional organizations, National Agricultural Research Systems and Universities, as well as several UN agencies, advanced research institutes and the Consultative Group for International Agricultural Research.

The motivation and conceptualization for this farming systems analysis was provided by John Dixon, Australian Centre for International Agricultural Research (ACIAR) and Dennis Garrity, World Agroforestry Centre (ICRAF) who set out to update and deepen the FAO/World Bank global analysis of farming systems in the book *Farming Systems and Poverty* (Dixon et al. 2001). Overall responsibility for technical contents and editing was shared by John Dixon (ACIAR), Jean-Marc Boffa and Dennis Garrity, (ICRAF); with major contributions from Timothy O. Williams, International Water Management Institute (IWMI), Tilahun Amede, International Crops Research Institute for the Semi-Arid Tropics (ICRISAT), and George Mburathi, formerly of Food and Agriculture Organization (FAO). Book development was coordinated by Jean-Marc Boffa (ICRAF) in consultation with John Dixon (ACIAR). Chris Auricht led the spatial data analysis, and Rosemary Lott led structural editing and copyediting.

The strategic guidance of an advisory committee composed of Martin Bwalya (NEPAD-AU); Martin Shem, Rwanda Agricultural Board (RAB); George Mburathi, John Lynam and Steve Franzel (ICRAF); Maxwell Mudhara (University of KwaZulu); John Dixon (ACIAR); and Dennis Garrity (ICRAF) is gratefully acknowledged. We also are indebted to the advice of many other experienced professionals, including Geoffrey Mrema, Duncan Spencer, Adama Ekberg Coulibaly, Rudy Rabbinge, Nick Austin, John Latham, Stanley Wood, Hans Binswanger and Prabhu Pingali, to name but a few.

The farming systems analysis integrated spatial data, administrative statistics and expert knowledge. Spatial data layers originate from various institutions including the Food and Agriculture Organization, United Nations, International Institute for Applied Systems Analysis, International Food Policy Research Institute, University of Minnesota, Center for International Earth Science Information Network, ITC/University of Twente Faculty of Geo-information Science and Earth Observation, World Agroforestry Centre, and the Centre for World Food Studies. Administrative statistics and reports were sourced from African Union, New Partnership for Africa's Development-African Union, United Nations Economic Commission for Africa, Forum for Agricultural Research in Africa, African Development Bank, R&D projects such as Sustainable Intensification of Maize and Legume Systems for Food Security in

Eastern and Southern Africa (SIMLESA), and the World Bank, International Fund for Agricultural Development, CGIAR and other international development organizations. We benefited from the knowledge of a large number of individuals who contributed local maps and expert knowledge that helped to characterize and refine the boundaries of the farming system zones (Table 2.7) and to enrich the judgments about key drivers, trends and strategic interventions for each farming system.

Our thanks are also due to the painstaking work and advice from external reviewers. The farming systems book chapters were reviewed by 27 external reviewers and 7 reviewers of the whole manuscript (see list of Contributors). Adama Ekberg Coulibaly (UNECA) provided strategic advice and convened with UNECA support an expert group meeting at ICRAF that yielded review feedback on key farming systems chapters. The valuable comments from all these reviewers are gratefully acknowledged.

Financial support for book development from ACIAR and The World Bank Group is gratefully acknowledged. The assistance and guidance from senior staff of FAO for this update of the 2001 FAO/*World Bank Farming Systems and Poverty* book – and in particular from John Latham for his assistance in posting the farming systems data to the FAO website – is also appreciated. Finally, we gratefully acknowledge the contributions to book purchases by ACIAR, International Maize and Wheat Improvement Center (CIMMYT) and the CGIAR Research Program on Maize Agri-food Systems (CRP MAIZE AFS)*, United States Agency for International Development (USAID), Deutsche Gesellschaft für Internationale Zusammenarbeit (GIZ) GmbH, IWMI-CGIAR Research Program on Water, Land and Environment (WLE), International Institute of Tropical Agriculture (IITA), FAO and African Conservation Tillage Network (ACT-Africa) for targeted distribution to African policy, research and educational organizations.

The Editors

* The CRP MAIZE AFS receives W1&W2 support from the Governments of Australia, Belgium, Canada, China, France, India, Japan, Korea, Mexico, Netherlands, New Zealand, Norway, Sweden, Switzerland, the UK, the United States and the World Bank.

Abbreviations

Acronyms

ACIAR	Australian Centre for International Agricultural Research
ADLI	Agriculture Development-Led Industrialization
ADMARC	Agricultural Development and Marketing Corporation (Malawi)
AEZ	Agroecological Zone
AfDB	African Development Bank
AGRA	Alliance for a Green Revolution in Africa
AIDS	Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome
APP	Africa Progress Panel
ASAL	Arid and Semi-arid Lands
ASARECA	Association for Strengthening Agricultural Research in Eastern and Central Africa
ATA	Agricultural Transformation Agency (Ethiopia)
AU	African Union
BEAT	Barefoot Education for Afrika Trust (Zimbabwe)
CA	Conservation Agriculture
CAADP	Comprehensive Africa Agriculture Development Programme
CABI	Centre for Agriculture and Bioscience International
CAMES	Maître de Recherche en Sciences Agronomiques
CARE	Christian Action Research and Education
CASI	Conservation Agriculture-based Sustainable Intensification
CBPP	Contagious bovine pleuropneumonia
CCARDESA	Centre for Coordination of Agricultural Research and Development for Southern Africa
CCPP	Contagious caprine pleuropneumonia
CGIAR	Consultative Group for International Agricultural Research
CIAT	International Center for Tropical Agriculture (Centro Internacional de Agricultura Tropical)
CIESIN	Center for International Earth Science Information Network
CIFOR	Center for International Forestry Research
CIMMYT	International Maize and Wheat Improvement Center
CIRAD	French Agricultural Research Centre for International Development (Centre de Coopération Internationale en Recherche Agronomique pour le Développement)

CO ₂	Carbon dioxide
COMESA	Common Market for Eastern and Southern Africa
COOPAC	Coopérative pour la Promotion des Activités Café (Rwanda)
CORAF	Conseil Ouest et Centre Africain pour la Recherche et le Développement Agricole
CRIG	Cocoa Research Institute of Ghana
CSA	Climate-smart agriculture
CTA	Centre Technique de Coopération Agricole et Rurale
DAP	Di-ammonium Phosphate
DRC	Democratic Republic of Congo
DTMA	Drought Tolerant Maize for Africa
EAC	East African Community
EAHB	East African Highland Banana
ECF	East Coast Fever
EIAR	Ethiopian Institute of Agricultural Research
ENSO	El Niño Southern Oscillation
FAO	Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations
FAOSTAT	FAO Statistical Databases (United Nations)
FARA	Forum for Agricultural Research in Africa
FASID	Foundation for Advanced Studies on International Development
FBFS	Fish-based farming system
FDI	Foreign direct investment
FEWS-NET	Famine Early Warning Systems Network
FIPS	Farm Input Promotions Africa Ltd
FMD	Foot and mouth disease
FMNR	Farmer-Managed Natural Regeneration
FRS	Forest rent subsystem of the tree crop farming system
FSA	Farming Systems Approach
FSR&D	Farming Systems Research and Development
GADP	Gross Agricultural Domestic Product
GAEZ	Global Agroecological Zone
GDP	Gross Domestic Product
GET	Geoscience Environment Toulouse
GHG	Greenhouse gas
GHI	Global Hunger Index
GIS	Geographic Information System
GIZ	German Corporation for International Cooperation
GNI	Gross National Income
GWUE	Green Water Use Efficiency
IAGU	Institut Africain de Gestion Urbaine
IBLI	Index Based Livestock Insurance
ICARDA	International Center for Agricultural Research in the Dry Areas
ICIMOD	International Centre for Integrated Mountain Development
ICRAF	World Agroforestry Centre
ICRISAT	International Crops Research Institute for the Semi-Arid Tropics
ICT	Information Communication Technology
IDRC	International Development Research Centre
IFAD	International Fund for Agricultural Development

IFPRI	International Food Policy Research Institute
IGAD	Inter-Governmental Authority on Development
IIASA	International Institute for Applied Systems Analysis
IITA	International Institute for Tropical Agriculture
ILRI	International Livestock Research Institute
IMPACT	International Model for Policy Analysis of Agricultural Commodities and Trade
INM	Integrated Nutrient Management
INTSORTMIL	International Sorghum and Millet Collaborative Research Support Program
IPM	Integrated Pest Management
IPS	Industrial plantation subsystem of the tree crop farming system
IRD	French National Research Institute for Sustainable Development (Institut de Recherche pour le Développement)
IRDP	Integrated Rural Development Program
ISFM	Integrated Soil Fertility Management
ISRIC	World Soil Information Centre (also International Soil Reference and Information Centre)
IT	Information Technology
ITC	Center for International Earth Science Information
IWAD	Integrated Water and Agricultural Development Ghana Limited
IWMI	International Water Management Institute
JRC	Joint Research Centre
KARI	Kenya Agricultural Research Institute
LER	Land Equivalent Ratio
LGP	Length of Growing Period
LSIFS	Large-scale irrigated farming system
LSLA	Large-scale land acquisition
MENA	Middle East and North Africa region
MPA	Marine Protected Area
M-PESA	M-Pesa (M for mobile, pesa is Swahili for money) is a mobile phone-based money transfer, financing and microfinancing service
N	Nitrogen
NA	North Africa
NALEP	National Agriculture and Livestock Extension Program (Kenya)
NARI	National Agricultural Research Institute
NARS	National Agricultural Research System
NEFSALF	Nairobi and Environs Food Security, Agriculture and Livestock Forum
NEPAD	New Partnership for Africa's Development
NGO	Non-Governmental Organization
NPK	Nitrogen-Phosphorous-Potassium
NRCRI	National Root Crops Research Institute (Nigeria)
NRM	Natural Resource Management
NTFP	Non-Timber Forest Product
NUANCES	Nutrient Use in Animal and Cropping systems – Efficiencies and Scales
NVDI	Normalized Difference Vegetation Index
ODA	Overseas Development Assistance

ODI	Overseas Development Institute (UK)
OECD	Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development
OPV	Open Pollinated Variety
P	Phosphorous
P/PET	Precipitation /Potential Evapotranspiration
PEN	Poverty and Environment Network
PPP	Public-Private Partnership
PPP	Purchasing Power Parity
PPR	Pestes des petits ruminants
PRSP	Poverty Reduction Strategy Programme
R4D	Research for Development
R&D	Research and Development
RAB	Rwanda Agricultural Board
REDD+	Reducing emissions from deforestation and forest degradation in developing countries
ReSAKSS	Regional Strategic Analysis and Knowledge Support System
RinD	Research in Development
RNFE	Rural Non-Farm Economy
RUAF	Resource Centres on Urban Agriculture and Food Security
RUE	Rain Use Efficiency
S3A	Science Agenda for Agriculture in Africa
SADC	Southern Africa Development Community
SAP	Structural Adjustment Program
SAPEP	Smallholder Agricultural Productivity Enhancement Program (Burkina Faso)
SDG	Sustainable Development Goal
SIDS	Small Island Developing States
SIMLESA	Sustainable Intensification of Maize Legume Cropping Systems for Food Security in Eastern and Southern Africa
SIP	Sustainable Intensification Practice
SIS	Smallholder intensified subsystem of the tree crop farming system
SLA	Sustainable Livelihoods Approach
SNSF	Swiss National Science Foundation
SRO	Sub-Regional Organization
SSA	sub-Saharan Africa
STCP	Sustainable Tree Crops Program (West Africa)
TAPRA	Tegemeo Agricultural Policy Research and Analysis (Kenya)
TFP	Total Factor Productivity
TLU	Tropical Livestock Unit
UEMOA	West African Economic and Monetary Union
UK	United Kingdom
UN	United Nations
UNDP	United Nations Development Program
UNECA	United Nations Economic Commission for Africa
UPA	Urban and peri-urban agriculture
UPUFS	Urban and peri-urban farming system
USA	United States of America
USAID	United States Agency for International Development (USA)

WECARD	West and Central African Council for Agricultural Research and Development
WFP	World Food Program
WHO	World Health Organization
WUA	Water Users' Association
WWF	World Wildlife Fund

Abbreviations (units)

%	percentage
pc	percentage
BP	before present
CV, c.v.	Coefficient of Variation
cm	centimetre
d	day
g	gram
ha	hectare
h, hr	hour
incl	including
k	thousand
kcal	kilocalorie
kg	kilogram
km, km ²	kilometre, square kilometre
mm, m, m ³	millimetre, metre, cubic metre
M (m), Mt	million, million tonne
MW	megawatt
pa	per annum
pc, per capita	per person
pop	population
USD, US\$	US dollar



Taylor & Francis

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

Part I

Introduction



Taylor & Francis

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>

1 Africa through the farming systems lens

Context and approach

John Dixon, Dennis Garrity, Jean-Marc Boffa, Adama Ekberg Coulibaly, Medhat El-Helepi, Christopher M. Auricht and George Mburathi

Key messages

- The African continent is at a turning point, moving from unfulfilled development potential towards sustainable agricultural intensification, which must accompany and drive economic growth to alleviate poverty and improve food security.
- African agriculture is heterogeneous and dynamic. Investing in sustainable agricultural intensification requires a framework to differentiate and target different investments responsive to the needs of different farming system. Each of the 15 broad farming systems in Africa comprises millions of farm households with similar livelihood patterns and broadly similar development opportunities.
- Seven drivers operating in various combinations shape the trends and development options for each farm household and the different strategic interventions for each farming system.
- Farming systems analysis can contribute to broad-based transformation and improved food and nutrition security in several ways. Because most food insecure and hungry people reside in rural areas, effective food systems must be based on productive and resilient farming systems that integrate food consumption and production decisions, maintain diverse local diets to reduce malnutrition, yet also facilitate improved production and trading with wider markets.
- Farming system intensification tailored to local resources, crops and livestock will generally increase farm labour productivity and reduce poverty. Rural poverty reduction strategies for job creation, gender empowerment and youth entrepreneurship should reflect different livelihood patterns in each farming system.
- Analysis of farming systems, including forward and backward linkages and value-addition, can focus investments on bundles of commodities, food processing and agribusiness potential, which improve food and nutrition security for consumers and producers.
- Livelihood systems in Africa are highly vulnerable to shocks, including market volatility, climate variability and climate change. Systematic analysis of farming systems can facilitate the identification of policies and investments that target the development of sustainable and resilient farming systems.

Summary

Despite vigorous national economic growth, significant rural poverty and food insecurity persists in many African countries, despite notable national economic development since the late 2000s. About 90 per cent of Africa's poor live in rural areas and about 80 per cent derive their living from rainfed farming. Improving smallholder agriculture is now seen as fundamental to inclusive sustainable development. The African continent contains a mosaic of natural resources, human settlements and institutions which shape fifteen major farming systems, each with a characteristic mixture of trees, crops, livestock, fish and livelihoods – and particular development pathways. Within each farming system zone, the farm household systems and opportunities are shaped by seven drivers of change, notably population, natural resources and climate, energy, human capital, technologies, markets and policies. To escape poverty and improve food and income security, African farm households follow one or more of a set of strategies including intensification and diversification of production and increased off-farm income.

This book takes a unique farming system perspective on the analysis of the drivers, trends and opportunities for farm households to improve food security or escape from poverty. In this way, the book identifies strategic science, investment and policy interventions, targeted to each farming system. The book updates and deepens the sub-Saharan African (SSA) regional component of the FAO/World Bank 2001 global analysis of farming systems, and it has been carefully structured to complement rather than replace existing sectoral and regional development assessments of the African continent.

This chapter introduces the African agricultural and food security context, the farming system framework, key drivers of change and the fifteen principal farming systems in Africa.

From unfulfilled potential in Africa to sustainable development

The vision of a prosperous rural Africa, with abundant economic opportunities, sustainable use of natural resources, and an end to poverty and hunger, underpins this book.

The roots of the unfulfilled development potential of Africa lie in the stagnation of many African economies and agricultural sectors during the period from the 1970s to the 1990s – sometimes referred to as the 'lost decades'. Subsequently, most countries have emerged from stagnation and are recording impressive economic growth rates in this new millennium (Badiane and Collins 2016). By 2012, six of the ten fastest growing economies in the world were located in Africa. By 2015 the SSA region recorded a 4.4 per cent growth rate, equivalent to the average growth rate of all low- and middle-income countries. Nevertheless, agricultural sector growth is slow and the agricultural sector share, measured in Gross Domestic Product (GDP) terms, is modest, despite the land resources and agricultural population of Africa. In fact, development planners normally expect agriculture to contribute a greater share of GDP given the prevailing levels of per capita income in Africa.

In order to benefit fully from sustainable development pathways, national economic growth must be complemented by vigorous agricultural and rural development. Agriculture remains the main source of livelihoods for the rural population, which represented approximately half of the African population of nearly 1.2 billion in 2015. In contrast to other regions of the world, African farming (including pastoral, livestock, forestry

and fishing) engages two-thirds of the continent's labour force and contributes about one-third of regional GDP. Moreover, growth in farm household income generally stimulates substantial rural non-farm economic growth. However, the persistence of widespread food insecurity and rural poverty in Africa, as well as natural resource degradation, was the motivation for the analysis reported in this book.

For maximum effectiveness of agricultural development policies, investment programs and agricultural research, it is necessary to unpack the diversity of African agriculture into distinct, broad farming system zones (hereafter referred to as farming systems) and ascertain priority strategic interventions for each system. For this purpose, the constraints and opportunities are analysed and probable trajectories of development identified. Farm household income, livelihoods and food security are closely related and dependent on the nature of the farming system. The analysis recognizes the patterns of inherent diversity of farm households within any particular farming system zone and the various coping strategies employed by farm households.

This book takes a unique approach to the African drama and subsequent development, applying the farming systems perspective to the identification of priorities for agricultural policy, investment, agribusiness and technology development. The analysis complements, rather than replaces, existing assessments of African agricultural and rural development. While the geographic scope of this book is continental Africa, the emphasis lies on the complex farming systems of SSA. This book updates and deepens the SSA regional analysis of the FAO/World Bank *Farming Systems and Poverty* publication (Dixon et al. 2001). It takes into account the smallholder development successes with maize, cassava, cotton, horticulture and dairy (Abate et al. 2015; Haggblade and Hazell 2010) and the new policy settings resulting from the 2014 Malabo Declaration by African leaders to eradicate hunger by 2025 within the context of a fully transformed agriculture (Malabo Montpellier Panel 2017). The book has been written for policymakers, research leaders and investors who seek to target agricultural policy, investment plans and science priorities for maximum impact in agricultural and rural sectors.

This chapter introduces the farming systems approach used in this book, summarizes the key drivers and trends in agricultural development, and discusses the strategies used by farm households to escape poverty and improve livelihoods. The chapter also contrasts development progress in SSA with other regions, outlines the status of African food and agricultural systems, and classifies African agriculture into fifteen major farming systems. Chapter 2 outlines the methods and data used for the analysis; Chapters 3–16 list the characteristics, trends and priority interventions in each of the fifteen farming systems; and Chapters 17–19 offer a consolidation of findings, summary of ways forward and the main conclusions of the analysis.

Contrasts with other regions

Development indicators for continental Africa are often presented separately for SSA and North Africa, the latter also forming part of the Middle East and North Africa region (MENA). As shown in Table 1.1, the SSA annual economic growth rate was triple the average of MENA in 2014 and 2015, although slower than the growth rates of South Asia and East Asia. Per capita income in SSA, calculated on a purchasing power parity basis, still lags behind other regions. Conversely, per capita income in North Africa in 2014–15 was above average.

Table 1.1 Food security, economic and demographic characteristics by development region

<i>Item</i>	<i>Sub-Saharan Africa</i>	<i>North Africa and Middle East</i>	<i>South Asia</i>	<i>East Asia[#]</i>	<i>Developing countries (all)[#]</i>
Global hunger index (GHI)	32	12	29	13	22
Extreme poverty (%)*	43	3	19	7	15
GNI/cap (\$PPP)**	3,382	11,834	5,299	11,872	8,811
Economic growth (%)	4.4	1.5	6.9	6.7	4.9
Total population (million)	973	357	1,721	2,020	5,682
Population growth rate (%)	3	2	2	1	1

Source: World Bank (2015), IFPRI (2015).

Notes: Estimates are rounded. Data are from 2014 or 2015 except poverty estimates which derive from 2012.

*Extreme poverty is based on US\$1.90 per capita consumption per day (representing an update of the earlier US\$1.25 poverty level).

**Gross national income (GNI) per capita calculated at purchasing power parity.

[#]East Asia includes the Pacific. The developing countries' estimates represent all low- and middle-income countries as classified by the World Bank in 2015.

Despite the promising economic growth rate, SSA experienced greater food insecurity than developing countries overall. Moreover, about one-quarter of the SSA population were undernourished, compared with 15 per cent across all developing countries. Food and nutrition security is not only a major current challenge for SSA but also a prerequisite for sustained human development.

By poverty measures, SSA also lags behind other regions. In 2015 more than 40 per cent of the SSA population lived in extreme poverty, consuming less than US\$1.90 per day. About 90 per cent of African poor live in rural areas, although the number of urban poor is increasing with the growth of cities. Most of the rural poor scratch a living from rainfed farming, often supplemented by off-farm work. Many poor households are also food and nutritionally insecure (and vice versa). Because of extensive poverty, limited wealth is directly reinvested in farming systems. However, given agriculture is the main source of livelihood for two-thirds of African poor, boosting agriculture generally reduces national income inequality and improves food and nutrition security.

It should be noted that there has been considerable development progress in SSA since the turn of the century. The 2015 growth rate was double the growth rate during the early millennium years or the period from the 1970s to the 1990s. The global hunger index (GHI) improved from 44 in 2000 to 32 in 2015. Similarly, per capita incomes had increased and extreme poverty was reduced substantially over the period 2000 to 2015.

With a population of 1.2 billion (compared with a total population of 5.6 billion in low- and middle-income countries globally), Africa faces major development challenges and, at the same time, great opportunities. Urbanization is increasing rapidly and already approximately half the population lives in cities. Overall, the poverty, food and nutrition insecurity and income inequality stand in marked contrast to the richness of the natural resources (mineral and agricultural) and the development potential of farming systems across Africa. Arguably, the region will need more targeted investment and strengthened institutions to achieve food and nutrition security, boost rural economic growth with equity, and to achieve the Sustainable Development Goals.

Food and agriculture systems

Food and agricultural systems span the full length of food chains – from agricultural resources and inputs to food production, value chains and consumption. In Africa, food and agricultural systems are diverse and complex. In rural areas, food production and consumption are closely integrated, with many farm households producing much of their own food needs, and in African cities informal backyard and peri-urban food production is common.

Smallholder farm women and men produce a wide variety of food grains, root crops, cash crops and livestock that support diverse food and livelihood systems in different zones. Agricultural exports, including cocoa, coffee and cotton, account for about one-sixth of total exports; meanwhile cereals account for about one-tenth of total imports, albeit increasing for rice, wheat and maize. During the period from 1990 to 2015, the terms of trade for African countries worsened appreciably, which has wider policy implications.

Because food represents a large proportion of expenditure for so many low-income families (including smallholder households), persistent high and volatile food prices constrain their ability to obtain food and nourishment. Further, it also restricts their ability to purchase health, education and other essential goods and services. Malnutrition is strongly correlated with poor dietary diversity and, in farming areas, with low production diversity. Hotspots of food and nutrition insecurity and poverty often occur in areas of high population density, severe land degradation and slow agricultural growth.

The main sources of dietary energy and protein for the African population are summarized in Table 1.2 (data on specific nutrients are limited). In 2010, dietary energy was largely sourced from plants, principally cereals and starchy roots; animal products provided about one-quarter of dietary protein and also many other nutrients. The dominant crop sources were maize, sorghum, millet, cassava and wheat, with rice consumption

Table 1.2 Dietary energy and protein availability by food group

<i>Food group</i>	<i>Dietary energy (kcal/capita/day)</i>	<i>Dietary protein (g/capita/day)</i>
Plant products	2377	52.7
Animal products	217	16.1
Total	2594	68.6
<i>Breakdown by main commodity groups:</i>		
Cereals	1288	33.1
Starchy roots and tubers	329	3.9
Pulses	106	6.7
Oil seeds and oils	281	2.8
Vegetables	47	2.3
Fruit	106	1.2
Meat	87	7
Milk	88	4.5
Fish	19	3

Source: FAOSTAT (2019).

Notes: Dietary energy and protein data intake are relatively stable over the years – the above data refer to the year 2010 for Africa. The category of cereals excludes use for beer. Pulses exclude groundnuts.

Table 1.3 Sources of dietary energy and protein by agricultural commodities

<i>Commodities</i>	<i>Dietary energy (kcal/cap/day)</i>	<i>Dietary protein (g/cap/day)</i>
Maize	376	9.6
Rice	227	4.5
Sorghum	146	4.4
Millet	99	2.4
Cassava	149	1.1
Yams	79	1.3
Plantains	36	0.3
Cowpeas	–	–
Groundnuts	41	1.8
Cattle	109	5.9
Sheep and goats	14	1.1
Poultry	30	2.9
Fish	19	3.0

Source: FAOSTAT (2019).

Notes: Dietary energy and protein are indicative, referring to continental Africa. The products of the crop or the animal type (cattle meat and milk, poultry meat and eggs) are included within the respective category. Nevertheless, the listed components represent only a part of the full diets and so add up to less than the total intake.

increasing rapidly (Table 1.3). Vegetables and fruit played minor roles in the provision of energy or protein but were important sources of nutrients and minerals. While urban areas consumed significant imports of cereals, rural areas tended to be dependent on local food production.

The averages in Table 1.2 mask the wide variations within Africa in 2010, across regions and population groups. For example, dietary energy ranged from 2136 kcal per capita per day in East Africa to 3140 kcal per capita per day in North Africa; similarly, average protein intake varied from 57 grams per capita per day in East Africa to 92 grams per capita per day in North Africa (equivalent global consumption estimates are 2870 kcal per capita per day and 80 grams per capita per day). As might be expected, dietary energy and protein intakes also vary across different farming systems. Nutritional security, including the consumption of micronutrients, is of growing concern for policymakers. Fortunately, the majority of the rural population benefits from reasonably diverse diets associated with the wide range of food crops and livestock produced on most small African farms.

Through the farming systems lens

Basic concepts

The mosaic of natural resources, climate, institutions, markets and agricultural services across Africa results in diverse land use zones and patterns of farming, referred to in this book as farming systems zones, or simply farming systems. Obviously, agricultural research needs to focus on the issues and opportunities associated with current and future crop, tree and animal production, trade and consumption. Perhaps less obviously, the targeting and impact of many agricultural policies have spatial aspects which differ by agricultural zone. For example, many irrigation policies apply only to large-scale irrigation schemes

(often not small-scale irrigation), livestock water point development targets pastoralists, fertilizer policies are relevant to crop farmers, and export levies directly influence only a subset of farmers producing the export product.

At its simplest, a farming system comprises a population of farm households with similar livelihood patterns and similar development constraints and opportunities (see Box 1.1 for further explanation). The farming systems described in this book extend over large landscapes and multiple countries, and typically support tens of millions of inhabitants.

The pattern of farm enterprises and their management practices depend on the farm resource base along with the financial, social and cultural capitals. They are integral components of a farming system. Because family labour is a key resource of farm households, off-farm employment and remittances are included in the concept of the farming system. The farm enterprise patterns and their management are often influenced by local formal and informal institutions (in the sense of the well-established arrangements for management or exchange, for example competitive markets, common property resource regimes). These are also intrinsic aspects of the farming system. Household consumption is also included because, for many farm households in Africa, decisions on farm production and household consumption are interdependent.

Naturally, communities within each farming system comprise different farm household types with contrasting levels of resources, access to services and coping strategies. Distinct patterns of inter-household interaction can be associated with each farming system, for example the high social capital of traditional herders in pastoral areas, which underpins grazing and water point management, contrasts with the economic and social relationships between large commercial farms and smallholders in Southern Africa.

Systems thinking has been applied to agricultural research and development (R&D) planning and policymaking in Africa for nearly a century. The early pioneers included Allan (1965), based on analyses of Southern Africa during the 1920s, and Ruthenberg (1971), who inspired many farming systems researchers in the following decades. Of course, systems research requires a structured approach to analysing complexity (Cabrera and Cabrera 2015) and integrating knowledge from farmers, value chain entrepreneurs and from multiple scientific disciplines. Over nearly five decades of farming systems analyses, applications have gradually expanded the number of analytical variables (Norman 2002), geographic scope and purpose, notably from applied research in communities, to 'research-for-development' and now to 'research-in-development' at broader scales. Sinclair (2017) conceptualizes how such systems analysis can be applied in order to target, support and monitor impact at scale. A wide variety of methods have been applied, for example household food budgets, nutrient and feed balances, participatory appraisal and evaluation, geospatial analysis, farmer- and community-managed trials, innovation platforms and other multi-stakeholder tools. In order to inform research, extension, planners and policymakers, farming systems analysis can identify constraints and interventions or can identify, classify and characterize different types of farming systems.

In principle, farming system zonation can be undertaken at a number of different scales. Depending on the purpose, the analysis could focus on one or more of the following levels of aggregation: farm household; community (or village) and landscape; country; and region (Dixon et al. 2009). Careful consideration is required in relation to the choice of scale and acceptable levels of heterogeneity. Farming systems analysis can serve many different purposes. For national and regional policymakers and research leaders, the characterization of a modest number of broad farming systems is most useful (Garrity et al. 2017). It is important to identify key drivers and trends which shape the directions

of farming systems development. Each farming system is influenced in different ways by external forces, including predictable long-term trends (e.g. increasing population density), unpredictable variations (e.g. climatic or economic shocks) and development interventions (e.g. projects, new technologies or policy changes).

The 2001 FAO/World Bank analysis of farming systems and poverty (Dixon et al. 2001) focused on resource endowment and ‘services endowment’ (access to services including markets) as primary determinants of farming system patterns. This analysis described eight generic farming system types across the developing world, and seventy-two ‘regional’ farming systems across the six developing regions, including fifteen systems in SSA and eight systems in North Africa. Such analyses of major farming systems provide an important evidence base for agricultural policy and decisionmaking (Bwalya pers. comm.) and enables improved priority setting and accurate targeting of policies and investments. This approach supports the development of more specific policies and spatial planning of rural infrastructure, and it facilitates the monitoring of impact on different farming systems.

The above analysis influenced the update of the World Bank Rural Development Strategy and supported the prioritization and targeting of a number of CGIAR research programs. More generally, the study encouraged systems-oriented R&D projects and loans which integrated various aspects of farming including resource management, crops, trees, livestock and markets (Dixon 2006). In Africa, the study underpinned a number of subsequent assessments of African agriculture, including agricultural research and poverty reduction (Inter Academy Council 2004), and water resources development (Faures and Santini 2008). The framework was incorporated in the Science Agenda of the Forum for Agricultural Research in Africa (FARA) and was applied to support national Comprehensive African Agricultural Development Program (CAADP) agricultural investment planning in Ethiopia and Tanzania.

In this book the analyses of broad farming system zones are informed by an understanding of farm household processes, strategies and responses to the local resource, institutional and policy environment. In addition, interactions across scales are considered, for example the functionality and governance of communities, districts, watersheds, local institutions and value chains. Well-structured and functioning systems create incentives for sustainable resource management, higher productivity and improved food security, underpinning rural transformation and economy-wide growth.

Box 1.1 Definition of a farming system

A farming system is defined as a population of farm households, generally of mixed types and sizes, that as a group have broadly similar patterns of resources, livelihoods, consumption, constraints and opportunities, and for which similar bundles of development strategies and interventions would be appropriate. Often, such systems share broadly similar agroecological and market access conditions. There are inherent patterns of heterogeneity in any particular farming system, for example the interdependence between small and large farms.

Some of the major determinants of spatial differentiation in farming systems are discussed in the next subsection. The temporal differentiation or evolution of farming systems is addressed in the section on drivers and trends.

Differentiating African farming systems

Apart from some large-scale irrigation schemes, African farming systems are dominated by rainfed cropping and pastoralism, with trees and shrubs playing important roles in most areas. In SSA alone, there are nearly 100 million ha of starchy staples (cereals, roots, tubers and plantains), more than 20 million ha of cowpeas and groundnuts, as well as cash crops such as oil palm (4.6 million ha), cocoa, coffee, cotton (3 million ha each) and tobacco. Around 230 million head of cattle, 470 million head of sheep and goats, and over 1 billion poultry constitute, along with fish, the animal component of the farming systems. The majority of households manage integrated tree-crop-livestock systems with limited access to agricultural services (notably markets). Cash crops, perennials and livestock contribute importantly to food purchasing power and play critical roles in farming system function, efficiency and resilience. Distinct patterns of household production and consumption characterize each farming system.

These African farming systems are diverse, and they evolve in complex ways (Pingali et al. 1987). The two main determinants of farming systems structure and function are access to agricultural resources (or resource endowment) and access to agricultural services. In relation to the former, while there are well-watered temperate and productive highlands (and even some snow-covered mountain peaks), the vast majority of African lands are in low to mid altitudes with rainfall varying from virtually nil in the Sahara and Kalahari deserts to over 3000 mm in the highlands. The most important agroecological zones in SSA are: moist subhumid and humid zones accounting for 38 per cent of SSA land; dry subhumid areas which cover 13 per cent; and the arid and semi-arid areas which cover 43 per cent of SSA land. Most of North Africa is arid or semi-arid, with well-developed irrigation in some areas.

In relation to services endowment, there is considerable variation in the density and quality of agricultural services. African governments have begun to reinvest in agricultural services in line with the CAADP target of at least 10 per cent of public expenditure to be spent on the agricultural sector. Consequently, some farmers have benefited from improved rural transport and market infrastructure, as well as the boom in mobile phones and information infrastructure led by the private sector, while others have yet to benefit.

The rural population of approximately 0.63 billion is also distributed unevenly across the African landscape. Seventy per cent of West Africa's population lives in the moist subhumid and humid zones; in North Africa the population is concentrated in irrigated zones or semi-arid environments; in East Africa the population is distributed across several agroecological zones.

The diversity of resource endowments overlaid by a mosaic of human settlements, transport routes and markets, has shaped many different farming systems, each with its own structure and function. There might well be a greater diversity of farming systems in Africa than in any other agricultural region of the world – considering the diverse examples of highly productive banana-maize-coffee systems in the East African highlands, cereal-root crop-livestock systems in western Africa, artisanal fisheries off coastal Mozambique, nomadic pastoralism, and urban agriculture in many parts of Africa.

A number of principles guide the identification of African farming systems. First, the farming system classification must be useful for science leaders and policymakers to inform their decisions on how best to accelerate the improvement of food and nutrition security. Second, quantitative national, survey and spatial data, and key informant knowledge are equally important in delineating and analysing farming systems. Third, farming systems are characterized according to their 'central tendency' or median characteristics through

a process of pattern recognition which subsumes local heterogeneity. The main farming systems were mapped, and populations, prevalence of poverty, resource endowments, service endowments (access to markets), cultivated areas and livestock numbers were estimated from the resulting spatial analysis. Compared to the original analysis of Dixon et al. (2001), this update benefited from the availability of greater volumes of spatial data, although the breadth, consistency and compatibility of the spatial data are sometimes less than optimal. The methods and data sources are elaborated in Chapter 2.

The update analysis resulted in fifteen distinct farming systems, which are mapped (apart from the urban and peri-urban system) in Figure 1.1 and characterized in Table 1.4. Consistent with these principles, each of the farming systems is represented by a unique set of core characteristics or ‘central tendencies’ in relation to agroecology, access to services and livelihood pattern. Naturally, there is a modest degree of local heterogeneity,

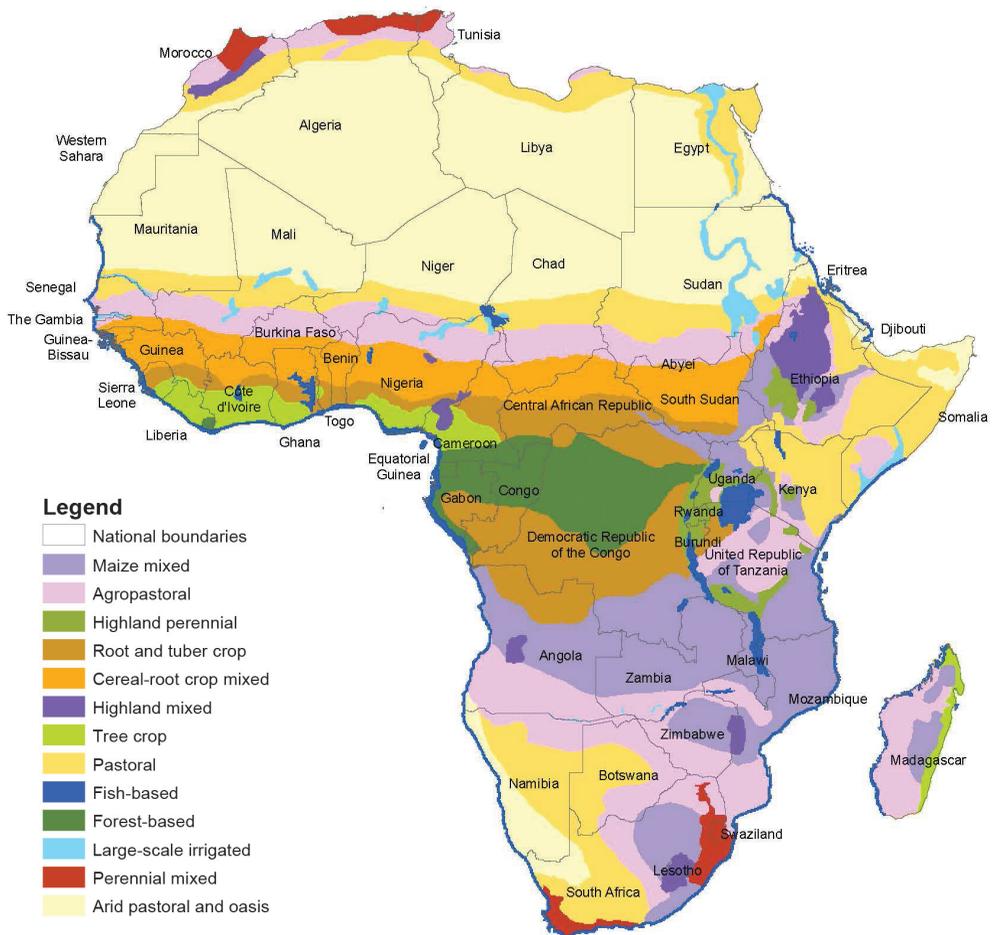


Figure 1.1 The farming systems of Africa.

Source: GAEZ FAO/IIASA, FAOSTAT, Harvest Choice and expert opinion.

Note: The map refers to the year 2015; the island and the urban and peri-urban farming systems were not mapped.

including some differences in farm types and sizes, variation in soils and minor small differences in access to services and markets. The major variation is captured in defined subsystems within each farming system, described in subsequent chapters.

The approach facilitated the organization of data and expert knowledge to characterize and differentiate the agricultural populations and resource bases of each of the farming systems. Each of the systems and subsystems is characterized by a set of typical farm types with recognizable household livelihood patterns. Generally, the boundaries between systems or subsystems are gradients or soft gradations which are represented in Figure 1.1 by 'feathered' boundary zones. The updated and revised farming system classification for African agriculture is therefore pragmatic and differentiates farming system areas spatially, which allows presentation of the analytical results to policymakers in a practical, usable form. The classification combines similar farming systems in North Africa and SSA, for example irrigated, pastoral, and arid pastoral and oases farming systems.

In examining Figure 1.1, the two main determinants of farming systems diversity, namely resource endowment (dependent on agroecology and population density), and services endowment (access to agricultural services including markets), should be recalled. In relation to agroecology, the length of growing season (LGP, measured in days of adequate soil moisture for plant growth) is a key indicator of potential biomass productivity. One approximate indicator of services endowment is the travel time to the closest major market town, based generally on maps of rural roads. In practice, the indicator of travel time to rural market is best combined with expert knowledge on market access, because other factors, in particular supply chains and mobile phone communications, also influence market access.

Table 1.4 describes the levels of resource and service endowments and the poverty, population and farming patterns for each farming system. Most farming systems contain a substantial to high proportion of extremely poor families. Based on the absolute numbers of poor households, nearly 150 million extremely poor farming children, women and men live in the four most-populated farming systems, namely the maize mixed, agropastoral, highland perennial, and root and tuber crop farming systems. The farming systems are listed in Table 1.4 in approximate order of the estimated numbers of extremely poor farm people.

Each broad farming system listed in Table 1.4 has a set of recognizable and distinct development constraints and opportunities, and would benefit from a particular set of policies, investments and research products. Strategic interventions for each farming system are identified in the respective farming system chapters.

Farm household decisions and strategies

The core argument of this book is that an understanding of household strategies, differentiated by type of farming system, should form the basis for the design of effective agricultural policies and allocation of public resources. It is important, therefore, to distinguish the strategies of farm households from agricultural sector strategies. For example, household strategies to intensify food production, even at the risk of declining soil fertility, would conflict with Government strategies to promote sustainable land management, unless complemented by actions to promote food security or establish safety nets. Most countries contain several different farming systems, often with contrasting development constraints and opportunities. For example, a number of West African countries contain both the commercial tree crop farming system and the cereal-root

Table 1.4 Key characteristics of African farming systems

<i>Farming system</i>	<i>Agricultural population (millions)</i>	<i>Key system characteristics</i>
Maize mixed	107	Mixed farming dominated by maize with medium access to services in subhumid areas of East, Central and Southern Africa. Other livelihood sources include legumes, cassava, tobacco, cotton, cattle, shoats, poultry and off-farm work.
Agropastoral	98	Mixed crop-livestock farming found in semi-arid (medium rainfall) areas of Africa, typically with low access to services. It includes the dryland mixed farming system of North Africa, often depending on wheat, barley and sheep. In SSA the main food crops are sorghum and millet, and livestock are cattle, sheep and goats. In both cases, livelihoods include pulses, sesame, poultry and off-farm work.
Highland perennial	61	Highland mixed farming is characterized by a dominant perennial crop (banana, plantains, enset or coffee) and good market access, and is found in humid East African highlands. Other livelihoods derive from diversified cropping including maize, cassava, sweet potato, beans, cereals, livestock and poultry augmented by off-farm work.
Root and tuber crop	50	Lowland farming dominated by roots and tubers (yams, cassava) found in humid areas of West and Central Africa. Other livelihood sources include legumes, cereals and off-farm work.
Cereal-root crop mixed	43	Mixed farming with medium-high access to services dominated by at least two starchy staples (typically maize and sorghum) alongside roots and tubers (typically cassava) found in the subhumid savannah zone in West and Central Africa. Other livelihood sources include legumes, cattle and off-farm work.
Highland mixed	45	Highland mixed farming above 1700 m dominated by wheat and barley, found predominantly in subhumid north-east Africa with pockets in Southern, West and North Africa. Other livelihood sources include teff, peas, lentils, broad beans, rape, potatoes, sheep, goats, cattle, poultry and off-farm work.
Tree crop	30	Lowland farming dominated by tree crops (> 25% cash income from cocoa, coffee, oil palm or rubber) found in humid areas of West and Central Africa with good access to services. Other livelihood sources include citrus, yams, cassava, maize and off-farm work.
Pastoral	38	Extensive pastoralism (dominated by cattle), found in dry semi-arid (low rainfall) areas with poor access to services. Other livestock include camels, sheep and goats alongside limited cereal cropping, augmented by off-farm work.
Fish-based	22	Found along coasts, lakes and rivers across Africa with medium-high access to services, with fish a major livelihood. Other livelihood sources include coconuts, cashew, banana, yams, fruit, goats, poultry and off-farm work.

Forest-based	12	Lowland, heavily forested humid areas in Central Africa with low access to services and subsistence food crops (cassava, maize, beans, coco-yam and taro). Other livelihood sources include forest products and off-farm work.
Irrigated	48	Large-scale irrigation schemes associated with large rivers across Africa, e.g. Nile, Volta. Often located in semi-arid and arid areas but with medium-high access to services. Includes the associated surrounding rainfed lands. Diversified cropping includes irrigated rice, cotton, wheat, faba, vegetables and berseem augmented by cattle, fish and poultry.
Arid pastoral and oasis	8	Extensive pastoralism and scattered oasis farming associated with sparsely settled arid zones across Africa, generally with very poor access to services. Livelihoods include date palms, cattle, small ruminants and off-farm work, irrigated crops and vegetables.
Perennial mixed	12	Semi-commercial and commercial farming with good access to services, dominated by perennials such as vines, fruit and eucalypts, found in Mediterranean (subhumid) climates in the coastal areas and hinterlands in Southern and North Africa. Other livelihoods include sugarcane, maize, legumes, cattle and small ruminants.
Island	4	Mixed cropping, horticulture, sugarcane and fishing in the principal islands associated with Africa. Other livelihoods include livestock. Often there is medium access to domestic and tourist resort markets, but limited exports.
Urban and peri-urban	na	Located within cities, or on their fringes with high population density and medium-high access to services and markets, often informal. Livelihoods include fruit, vegetables, dairy, cattle, goats, poultry and off-farm work.

Source: Based on existing data and author expert judgements for the year 2015. Off-farm work can be found in all systems, but is noted where it is a main livelihood.

crop mixed farming system, with dramatically different needs related to infrastructure, credit, market development and research.

Farm women and men are the key decisionmakers in the management of natural resources, farm production, family consumption and farm investment. The decisions are framed by formal and informal institutions which are influenced by community values, public policies, markets, resource access regimes and the knowledge, skills and experience of the household, with the broad goal of improved individual and community welfare (Figure 1.2). Climate and economic risks are major considerations in operational and tactical farm and household management decisions. Farm households have a leading role in the management of natural resources – this is sometimes overlooked. Also, with increasing opportunities for women in agriculture, women are playing a wider role in farm management decisions. Other family members, including the elderly and the youth, also may influence strategic management and investment decisions.

There are strong linkages between increased crop or livestock productivity, improved farm household food security and reduced rural poverty. In good seasons or on medium-large farms, food crop surpluses are sold. Smallholders may sell at harvest and then purchase later in the year when their household stocks have been consumed. Although there are exceptions, sales of farm or household produce increase purchasing power, and they generally improve household food and nutrition security and reduce poverty. Increased

food crop productivity often creates opportunities for diversification to higher value cash crop, tree or livestock income for households. Additional off-farm wage income also increases food purchase entitlements, often for the most vulnerable households, and offers flexibility for increasing purchases of fertilizer and other agricultural inputs. Population density and the level of infrastructural development influence the rate of spread of these outcomes. For these reasons, the mix of food crops, cash crops, livestock and trees, and their inter-linkages, is often an important determinant of food security outcomes. Gender roles in household decisionmaking and the management of income also shape the poverty, food and nutrition security outcomes. Farm size and wealth also count: normally smallholders spend a high proportion of additional income on local goods and services, whereas larger farmers tend to spend more outside the region.

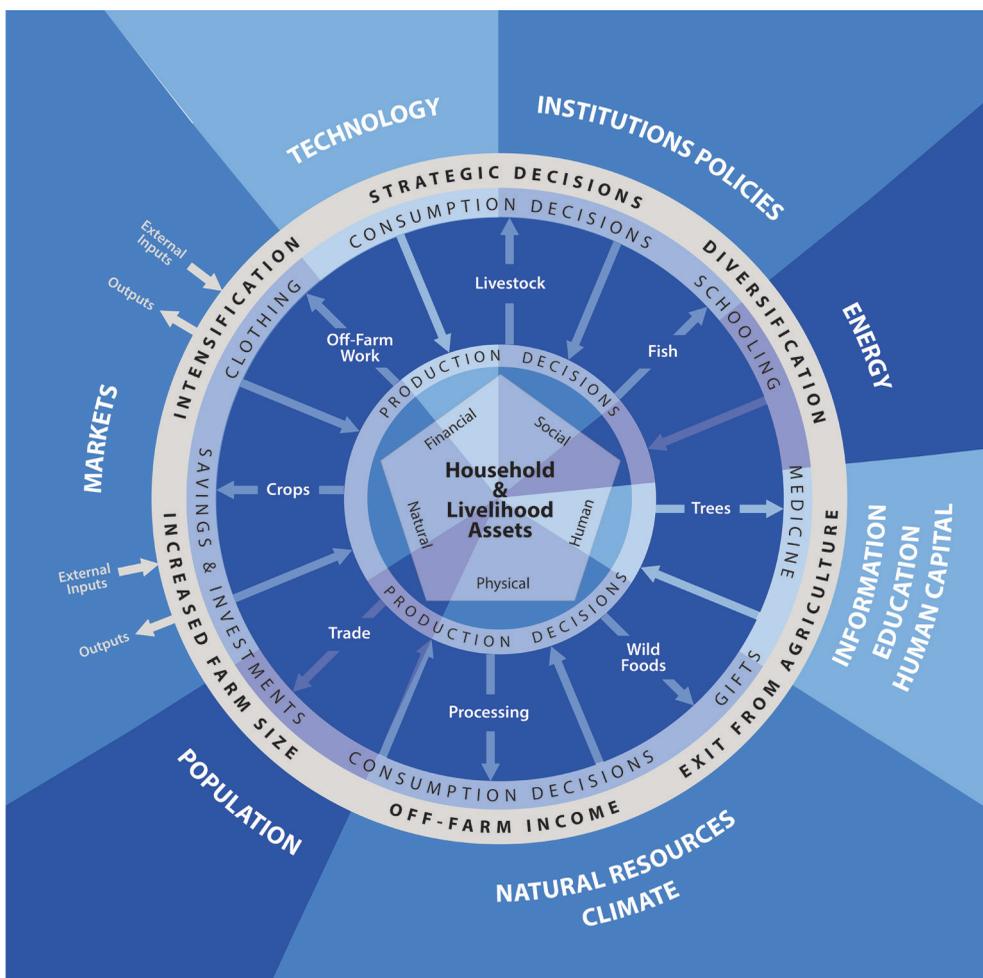


Figure 1.2 Farm household decisionmaking connecting resource management, production, consumption, investment and welfare.

The households in a farming system pursue recognizable strategies to secure household food and nutrition security, increase income, improve livelihoods and satisfy other household goals. For example, pastoralists with limited market access might seek to grow herd size while smallholder vegetable producers might endeavour to intensify production of profitable vegetables sought by the market. The strategies naturally depend upon the prevailing livelihood patterns and opportunities, as well as the pattern of smaller and larger farmers, female- and male-headed households and differing degrees of dependence on off-farm income, cash crops and livestock in the farming system. One typology in the maize mixed farming system in Malawi differentiated households, which were ‘hanging in’, ‘stepping up’ or ‘stepping out’ (Dorward 2009). Such pathway-oriented typologies represent one way to identify evolving patterns of social organization, and they are useful to understand the needs for technology and institutional innovations, and to guide research and policy decisions. Clearly, the development needs and constraints of individual households within one farming system, such as the maize mixed farming system, are more similar to one another than to the households in another farming system.

In broad terms, small farm households have five main strategies to improve livelihoods and household food security or escape poverty, as follows:

- intensification of existing production and processing patterns
- diversification of production and processing patterns
- expanded farm, enterprise or herd size
- increased off-farm income, both agricultural and non-agricultural
- exit of the whole family from farming in the particular farming system.

These strategic options are not mutually exclusive: any particular household will often pursue a mixed set of strategies.

Intensification is defined as increased physical or financial returns from existing patterns of production, representing greater productivity of agricultural outputs including food and cash crops, livestock, trees and other beneficial activities. Although intensification is frequently associated with increased productivity as a result of greater use of purchased inputs, intensification may also arise from improved knowledge that leads to better use of existing household resources, including varieties and breeds, and labour and farm management skills, for example improved irrigation practices or better pest control. In Africa today, access to productive technologies, input and output markets often drives intensification. Readers are cautioned on the limits to rainfed crop-based intensification, partly because small farm sizes limit potential gains in household income. The concept of ‘intensification’ adopted in this book relates to increased productivity of existing farm activities, in contrast to on-farm diversification (see the following paragraph) and broader, landscape level, agricultural intensification which includes the introduction of new crops or livestock.

On-farm diversification is defined as an adjustment to the farm enterprise pattern in order to increase farm income or livelihoods. Often, there is a corresponding reduction in risk or income variability. Diversification exploits new market opportunities or existing market niches. Diversification may take the form of completely new enterprises, or may simply involve the expansion of existing, high value, enterprises. The addition or expansion of enterprises refers not only to production but also to on-farm processing

and other farm-based, income-generating activities. Farm women and men's knowledge, adequate technologies (even if adaptation might be required) and access to markets often drive diversification. Diversification, as used in this analysis, should not be confused with improved livelihoods from off-farm sources or additional off-farm income, as found in some rural development literature.

Some households increase income or escape poverty by expanding the farm business size – in this context size refers to managed rather than to owned resources – especially where population density is low, land rights permit and finance is available. Beneficiaries of land reform are an obvious example of this source of poverty reduction. Increased farm size may also arise through incursion into previously non-agricultural areas such as forest – often termed expansion of the agricultural frontier. Two other examples are increased herd size where grazing land is available, and settlers on new irrigation schemes. Although this option is not available within many systems, it is of relevance particularly in parts of Latin America and SSA. Increasingly, however, such 'new' lands are marginal for agricultural purposes, and they may not offer sustainable pathways to poverty reduction.

Off-farm income represents an increasingly important source of livelihood for many poor farmers. Seasonal migration has been one traditional household strategy for escaping poverty. Remittances are often invested in land or livestock purchases. In locations where there is a vigorous off-farm economy, some individuals from poor households augment the family income with part-time or full-time off-farm employment.

Where opportunities for improved livelihoods are perceived, a proportion of farm households will abandon their land and/or herds altogether, and relocate the whole family into other farming systems, or into other rural or urban locations with economically attractive off-farm activities. This means of escaping agricultural poverty is referred to in the following chapters as an exit from agriculture.

These poverty escape strategies refer to extremely poor households which form a significant proportion (sometimes more than half) of the farming population in all systems. The balance of farm households is somewhat better off with greater than US\$1.90 consumption per day; a small proportion could be termed 'well off'. The same five strategies apply to the 'non-extremely poor' farm households in relation to the enhancement of livelihoods and incomes. Typically, the strategy mix of poor households differs from that of better-off households, whether smallholder or medium commercial farms.

The above five household strategies for reducing hunger and poverty, and enhancing livelihoods and incomes, will be referred to frequently in the following chapters and their relative importance assessed, based on the judgement of experts who are knowledgeable about each particular system (see also Chapter 2).

Drivers and trends shaping African farmers' opportunities

Overall changes in farming systems since 2000

Since the origins of agriculture, the geography of crops, extent of livestock and the patterns of land use have continued to change. The degree of change in African farming systems over the period 2000–2015 is substantial. The agricultural population density has increased (even allowing for rural–urban migration) leading to a reduction in farm size, intensification of production and induced innovation in production practices. Meanwhile, agricultural market access has improved markedly, which has stimulated major changes in crop combination, herd composition and marketing of surpluses, but

notably not the widespread adoption of fertilizer. The farming systems with traditional export crops such as cocoa or coffee have maintained well-organized market systems. Another effect of improved service endowment has been diversification towards marketable crops and livestock. Such effects are most pronounced in the highland perennial farming system but are also evident in most farming systems including the maize mixed and cereal-root crop mixed farming systems. There has been an expansion of cultivated area in the majority of farming systems, notably the forest-based, cereal-root crop, maize mixed and agropastoral farming systems – reducing (but not off-setting) the pressure from increased population density. Notably, the land frontier has closed or is closing in many farming systems, including the four named earlier and the highland perennial and highland mixed farming systems.

Consequently, this analysis reflected the evolution of farming systems over the period 2000–2015. For example, where maize has been widely adopted in Central African areas that were originally cereal-root crop mixed systems, the areas were reclassified to the maize mixed farming system. The combination of changes in rural consumer preferences and the development of drought tolerant maize has also increased the proportion of maize, alongside sorghum and millet, in the agropastoral farming system, but not sufficiently to reclassify the farming system. The dualistic system characterized by mixed large-scale commercial and small-scale farming in Southern Africa was reassigned to other systems, notably the maize mixed and agropastoral systems. Market development has created more opportunities for smallholders in East Africa, in particular horticulture and dairy, and consequently the commercial smallholder highland perennial system has been enlarged. The key changes in the extent of farming systems over the period 2000–2015 are:

- creation of a newly delineated perennial mixed system in Southern Africa
- distribution of the large commercial and smallholder farming system entirely to other systems, notably perennial mixed, maize mixed and agropastoral systems
- adjustment of boundaries of many systems reflecting, primarily, increased population density, improved infrastructure and access to agricultural services, and improved technology and institutions
- substantial reduction in the extent of the cereal-root crop mixed farming system.

Quite apart from the major spatial changes, farming systems are changing incrementally. Some changes are visible, such as deforestation to expand cultivated land, but others relate to resource use, resource quality (e.g. fertility decline) or economic and social relationships (e.g. returns to labour, changing social capital). These build pressure over time which can generate step changes in enterprise combination or technology adoption. The trends and resulting pressure points can be identified by careful analysis and then future changes predicted. In the medium term, a set of universal drivers frames the evolution of each farming system along relatively predictable pathways. The seven drivers are:

- population, hunger and poverty
- natural resources and climate
- energy
- human capital, knowledge sharing and gender
- science and technology
- markets and trade
- policies and institutions.

Table 1.5 Principal drivers and trends in farming system development

<i>Drivers (trends)</i>	<i>Example metrics</i>	<i>Example influences on farm household decisions</i>	<i>Example influences on structure and function of farming system</i>
Population, food security and poverty (increased pressure)	Population density, migration, urbanization, diet, under-nutrition, poverty	Labour availability and productivity, farm practice adoption decisions, schooling, risk avoidance	Labour-saving technologies, reduced herding/expanded stall feeding, low investment
Natural resources and climate (reduced availability and quality)	Farm size, herd size, irrigation, land tenure, land degradation	Scarcity of land and nutrients creates incentives for irrigation and soil management, increased climate risk	Reduced farm and herd size, reduced land/labour ratios, shift from extensive to intensive practices, stronger integration of crops, trees and livestock
Energy availability and use (increased availability, volatile prices)	Energy availability and use, firewood use, electrification	Timeliness of operations, replacement of labour	Earlier planting, better weeding, post-harvest processing, appropriate mechanization, small-scale irrigation
Human capital, knowledge sharing and gender (improved education, information and benefit sharing)	Education and skill level, mobile phone ownership, extension/ farmer ratio	Improved farm decisions and management, improved benefit sharing, adoption of new practices or enterprises, greater involvement of women in decisions	Diversification, increased eco-efficiency (water and nutrient use efficiency), greater market orientation, improved gender equity, better farm-household management and increased total factor productivity
Science and technology (increased technology choices)	Productivity, technology adoption	Adoption of better practices and enterprises	Increased eco-efficiency, expanded production, improved quality of produce
Markets and trade (expanding market access and reduced marketing costs)	Input use, market surplus, supply chain length, food system structure, competition, agribusiness investment	Increased productivity, diversification, value-adding	Stronger market orientation and commercialization, reduced capital and transaction costs, greater intensification and diversification
Institutions and policies (strengthening institutions)	Expenditure on agriculture (incl. research, input subsidies, infrastructure), new regulations	Adoption of institutional innovations (markets, finance, risk sharing, conditional prepayment rate management)	Improved resource management, farmer group and cooperative coordination for marketing and resource management

The drivers correspond in general terms with the various drivers identified by other authors. For example, Reardon and Timmer (2014) identify five ‘transformations’ of the Asian agrifood economy (urbanization, diet changes, food system transformation, rural factor markets and capital-led farm technology intensification); these apply in part in Africa. Jayne (2016) and other authors describe other similar sets of mega-drivers.

In practice the above seven drivers interact, and the reader might anticipate a fundamental nexus between population density, access to natural resources and access to services including markets. It is important to note that trends (increasing, decreasing, steady) associated with each driver can rarely be assumed to be constant or linear. Whether there are ‘necessary’ and ‘sufficient’ conditions for change in each set of drivers plays out differently for different situations and for different farm sizes.

The above seven drivers influence farm household production and consumption decisions and farming system structure and function. Table 1.5 introduces the seven principal drivers which shape the development of farming systems structure and function in Africa; these are discussed in greater depth in the following subsections.

Population, hunger and poverty

People lie at the heart of sustainable development and farming systems options, and rapid population growth is dramatically shaping the limits and opportunities of farming pathways in all parts of the continent. Since 2000 the African region has had the fastest growing population in the world, and this is projected to continue for the coming decades. The total regional population was 1.2 billion in 2015 of whom 585 million (about half) were classified as agricultural. Regional population growth rate has been about 2.6–2.7 per cent p.a. since 1990, despite the effect of HIV/AIDS, but there is considerable variation across countries, for example the Ethiopian population growth rate is above 3.0 per cent. In the African context, such high growth rates boost the food economy and increase the dependency ratio of young and old on the workforce. While fertility rates have begun to drop in urban areas, the rural household’s traditional path to social security had been to have many children. However, there are indications of a growing emphasis in rural areas towards small families and well-educated children who can compete in the job market and earn off-farm income for the family.

The trends shown in Table 1.6 for SSA are indicative of the wider African situation. The SSA rural and agricultural populations are growing in absolute size although declining as a proportion of the total, partly because of rural-urban migration. Between 2010 and 2050 the rural population is projected to increase by 56 per cent, and the agricultural population by a slightly lower proportion. The SSA urban population is expected to surpass the rural population in about 2035. Such rapid urbanization stimulates urban and peri-urban farming, and influences other farming systems through opportunities for meeting growing and changing urban middle class demand for food. These demographic changes are expected to lead to a slower rate of decline in the land/agricultural population ratio and farm size – although the current person-land ratio is relatively low compared with that of Asia.

Such massive demographic changes raise four critical and interrelated policy issues. First, although the proportion of farmers in the total population is projected to decline from 56 to 33 per cent by 2050, the number of farmers will increase by half. Second, accordingly, in some farming systems with substantial forest or well-watered grazing lands, conversion of forest or grazing land to cropping is expected (as has happened since 2000

Table 1.6 Trends in population and food security in sub-Saharan Africa compared with the world

	1970	2000	2010	2050
SSA total population (million),	285	642	823	1892
(SSA total pop as % of world)	(8)	(10)	(12)	(20)
SSA urbanization (%),	20	32	36	56
(Global urbanization %)	(37)	(47)	(52)	(67)
SSA agricultural population (million),	206	368	428	617
(SSA ag pop as % of world)	(11)	(14)	(16)	(29)
SSA agric pop as % of total SSA pop,	72	57	52	33
(Global agric pop as % of total global pop)	(83)	(79)	(38)	(23)
SSA farm households (approx million)	38	67	78	112
Household food security (kcal/person/day),	–	2188	2495	2580
(reference year of estimate)		(mid-1990s)		(est 2030)
Undernourishment (% of population),	–	33	24	15
(year of estimate)		(1991)	(2014)	(2030)

Sources: FAO (2015), IFPRI (2015).

Notes: SSA agricultural and farm household populations in 1970 and 2050 were estimated by the authors.

in the forest-based and agropastoral farming systems). In other more densely populated farming systems (such as the highland perennial or highland mixed), average farm size is expected to decline (average farm size has already declined in many farming systems). Third, in either case, increased farm productivity is required, because, in the absence of a major expansion in food imports, each farm household will have to feed three households (themselves and two urban households – the equivalent global ratio will be four to one). Fourth, without adequate mechanization, system intensification and diversification could be held back by labour shortages. A further critical policy concern is whether sufficient viable employment opportunities in secondary and tertiary sectors can be generated to absorb rural populations leaving agriculture, to avoid hotbeds of unemployment and poverty in expanding peri-urban slums which already account for about 60 per cent of the urban population in Africa.

Household food security is a critical determinant of farm family decisions about production and consumption. Food security has energy and nutritional dimensions, and can be analysed from the demand side, supply side and the linking market systems (Qureshi et al. 2015). In SSA nearly half of the rural households are not food secure, with great variation in the distribution of undernourishment across farming systems and between years. In practice, most poor households lack food security, but some well-off households are also malnourished because of nutritionally unbalanced diets. However, the situation is improving, as shown in Table 1.6.

Off-farm income through wages or micro-business is an important source of cash for purchasing food, noting that a high proportion of African smallholders are net purchasers of food. In this context household or per capita income, or average GDP per capita, is an important indicator of purchasing power. Improved cash incomes may alleviate the risk of food entitlement failure, often described in terms of food production, market and consumption risk.

In the mid-1990s the average dietary energy consumption was 2188 kcal/person/day (compared with 2626 in developing countries as a whole). By 2010, dietary energy intake had increased to about 2495 kcal/person/day. Up to 2030, the average energy intake is projected to increase to 2580 kcal/person/day. In spite of the increased calorie supply, it is estimated that in 2030 around 15 per cent of the population (about 165 million people) will still be undernourished – an increase in the absolute number – unless deliberate measures are taken to ensure better access to food. Overall, it is clear that energy and nutrient deficiencies have constrained farmer activities and productivity, and they have slowed development, with long-term consequences for farming systems development.

Natural resources and climate

In many areas, as rural populations have grown, the availability of land for agricultural expansion has become limited. While African farmers have traditionally fallowed depleted cropland to restore soil fertility, many are now forced to crop some of their fields continuously. Fallowing has reduced or has been phased out in some systems. There is increased competition and more frequent conflicts between farmers and livestock herders regarding access to land used for community grazing in the past, thus reducing opportunities for crop-livestock synergies including manure production. The intensity of farming has increased often with inadequate investment in land management to restore fertility and limit soil erosion and other land degradation. Thus, maintenance of crop yields in the face of soil impoverishment has become a primary concern for many smallholder farmers across a range of farming systems.

Approximately two-thirds of agricultural land in SSA is estimated to be subject to degradation. These trends are worrisome, considering the imperative to increase agricultural yields to feed the rapidly growing population. Land degradation and the concurrent depletion of soil fertility which affects agricultural productivity has become a central development issue for policymakers, accentuated by climate change. As noted earlier, Africa is relatively well endowed with natural resources. However, soil resources are heterogeneous, with both some areas of deep fertile soils but also large areas of infertile and highly erodible soils (Inter Academy Council 2004).

One of the best overall indicators of natural resource health is net primary productivity, which varies according to regions in Africa. The decline in the annual biomass productivity of the land is particularly evident in the maize mixed farming systems in Zambia, Angola, DRC, Mozambique and Tanzania. There has also been marked degradation in the forest-based systems in the countries of the Congo Basin. Much of this loss of biomass productivity is due to forest clearing for agriculture, followed by lower productivity land use mosaic when forest is not allowed to sufficiently regrow. In contrast, biomass productivity in some parts of Sahelian and Sudanian West Africa has increased since the late 1990s, particularly in the agropastoral and cereal-root and tuber crops farming systems.

In relation to the 660 million ha of forest (about one-quarter of total land area), current annual deforestation is 0.16 per cent. The decline in closed-canopy forest area is expected to continue. However, as forest area declines and agricultural land is degraded, farmers have begun to regenerate or plant trees on crop lands. This trend, apparent in the agropastoral systems of the Sahel, is associated with the improved nutritional status of households. Wetlands and national parks are also often under pressure, despite national land use regulations or international conventions.

Over recent decades, rainfall patterns have changed across the globe, potentially affecting Africa more than other regions. In Africa, the most affected farming systems are likely to be those in the arid, semi-arid and dry subhumid areas, for instance the agropastoral and pastoral farming systems. The increasing frequency and severity of droughts are likely to cause more crop failures, high and rising cereal prices, low and falling livestock prices, decapitalization, distress sales of animals, and hunger. Vulnerable farm households are likely to buffer crop and livestock livelihoods with off-farm income, for instance seasonal migration, and wood and charcoal sales are common non-farm income sources. The above pressures could exacerbate land degradation and deforestation, accelerate the onset of desertification and drive people temporarily or permanently into more favoured farming systems, for instance the cereal-root crop mixed and maize mixed farming systems, and into urban areas. As a result, rural conflicts over resources will become more common, including between sedentary farmers and pastoralists.

Food and agricultural use of land has expanded steadily across Africa. Of the total land area, about 38 per cent was agricultural land, and approximately 9 per cent of total land was used for annual or permanent crops by 2015 (Table 1.7). The cultivated area increased from 170 million ha in 1961–1963 (including annually cultivated land and permanent crops) to 272 million ha by 2015 – mostly through the conversion of forest and grasslands and the shortening of fallows. Further expansion is possible. It is estimated that the Africa region has up to one-half of global agricultural land available for the expansion of crop land. The availability of suitable arable land in Africa for food and bioenergy crop production attracted much foreign investment and led to intense policy debates, especially since the 2008 food price spike. However, the momentum underlying the bioenergy crop production objective was undercut by recent changes in the European Union’s biofuels policies. As the food price spike passed, the priority for overseas food production abated. Domestic investment is now balancing foreign investment in large-scale farming ventures and is also being scaled up in medium-sized family farming.

Under existing climatic conditions, the region has large areas with high potential for rainfed cropping and grazing, and opportunities for expansion of surface water irrigation backed up by extensive (newly discovered) groundwater reserves. Only 2 per cent of the available water resources were utilized for irrigation (15.8 million ha equipped in 2015), compared with 20 per cent in developing countries overall. Projections suggest continued expansion of irrigated areas until 2030.

Table 1.7 Trends in land use in Africa

<i>Land use (million ha)</i>	<i>1970</i>	<i>2000</i>	<i>2015</i>
Agricultural land area	1057	1123	1133
Forest land area	–	670	624
Crop land, including permanent crops	186	230	272
Permanent crop land	17	28	34
Permanent meadows & pasture	870	893	861
Land area equipped for irrigation	8.4	13.2	15.8

Source: FAOSTAT (2015).

Notes: data are indicative, whole of Africa data.

Table 1.8 Trends in livestock and poultry populations in sub-Saharan Africa

<i>Animal type</i>	<i>1970</i>	<i>2000–</i>	<i>Growth rate 1970–2000 (% p.a.)</i>	<i>2010</i>	<i>Growth rate 2000–2010 (% p.a.)</i>	<i>2050 (estimate)</i>
<i>Population (million head)</i>						
Cattle	129	181	1.7	234	2.6	272
Sheep	114	150	1.7	199	2.3	330
Goats	92	184	3.9	269	3.2	446
Poultry	321	766	4.9	1162	3.0	1704
<i>Stocking rates on agricultural land (head/ha)</i>						
SSA cattle	0.14	0.20	–	0.24	–	0.21
(global ratio)	(0.26)	(0.30)		(0.33)		(0.35)
SSA sheep and goats	0.8	1.8	–	2.3	–	2.8
(global ratio)	(2.0)	(4.1)		(5.4)		(7.0)
<i>Farm household ownership (head/household)</i>						
Cattle	3.4	2.7	–	3.0	–	–
Sheep	3.0	2.3	–	2.6	–	–
Goats	2.5	2.8	–	3.5	–	–
Poultry	8.0	8.8	–	10.5	–	–

Source: FAOSTAT (2015).

Notes: The livestock populations and stocking rates are projections to 2050 derived using growth rates generated from the IMPACT model version 3.0 (Enahoro, Tarawali pers. comm.; Robinson et al. 2014).

Livestock are first and foremost an asset for many smallholders. Animal populations in SSA are expanding steadily, as shown in Table 1.8. Poultry and goat numbers have expanded rapidly and nearly trebled over the four decades from 1970 to 2010; cattle, sheep and camels have nearly doubled in numbers during this period. Fishing activities are also increasing in response to local demand from growing populations as well as from cities and for exports, and this offers a form of relatively liquid household savings.

Both agricultural and livestock populations have increased substantially over the three decades to 2010. However, the number of cattle and sheep per farm household have decreased somewhat, in contrast to an increased household holding of goats and poultry. There is, of course, greatly increased pressure on grazing lands (Table 1.8) and crop residues as a result. Continued increase in livestock and poultry is expected, driven by market opportunities and relative prices. In fact the stocking rates are significantly lower in Africa than other parts of the world, which suggests scope to further increase livestock numbers through the use of technologies and institutions for crop-livestock integration.

Energy

In Africa, only approximately 2 per cent of energy consumption is devoted to agricultural and forest production, and this has been relatively steady over the past several decades. There

is a marked variation in energy use between different parts of Africa, with Western Africa reporting less than half the agricultural and forestry energy intensity of Southern Africa.

Two major uses of energy in production are tillage (depending on whether manual, animal draught or mechanized) and water pumping for small-scale irrigation. In marketing, transportation is the dominant use of energy for input and produce chains. The intensification of food production will require greater use of energy for traction, inputs and processing of outputs, although crop production using conservation agriculture¹ practices is energy saving at the field level. Energy and food markets are now interlinked and price movements are correlated. Energy efficiency in food production, processing and marketing will be critically important in future decades.

Human capital, knowledge sharing and gender

Knowledge can be a powerful driver of farming systems development in many ways, and so information, human capital and inclusive approaches merit the close attention of policymakers. A key trend is the ‘feminization’ of farming as young males seek seasonal and longer-term employment in cities and other countries, leaving women as the *de facto* farm managers. Improved farm household decisionmaking, increasingly by women, requires strengthened capacity through education and farmer training, supplemented by the dissemination and sharing of technological, market, policy and institutional information.

Communication technologies such as radio and mobile phones have accelerated access to information through formal and informal networking, and strengthened social capital and farmer-to-farmer sharing. Of the new communication technologies, mobile phones have had the most far-reaching effects. Two aspects of mobile phones are widely recognized: their rapid adoption and their potential use for agricultural information dissemination. There has been an explosion of mobile phone ownership since the mid-2000s in many African countries. Interestingly, mobile money exchange is expanding at a similar rate to mobile phones in Kenya, albeit with a lag of about four years. Information communication technologies (ICTs) may well revolutionize agricultural technical and market information sharing and offer the potential for fully interactive decision support services – along similar lines to India.

Science and technology

Science and technology, supported by appropriate policies and institutions, have an important role in resource management and productivity growth in crops and livestock in future decades, which is essential to reduce African poverty and food insecurity. Important innovations which have emerged in recent years include improved varieties and breeds, conservation agriculture, better pest control and improved nutrient management – and also a range of institutional innovations which enhance information availability (e.g. ICTs), market access and reduce risk (e.g. index insurance). As a generalization, the past and existing innovations streams seem to have benefited higher potential farming systems (e.g. cereal-root crop mixed system) more than low potential farming systems (e.g. agropastoral and pastoral systems). The existing portfolio of innovations also appear to favour increased productivity over risk management and adaptation to climatic variability. Furthermore, some technologies are not well suited for existing farming systems which, together with weak scaling institutions, have led to low adoption rates.

Increased investment in agricultural research (which shows consistently high economic high returns) is of fundamental importance for the continued supply of innovations to

underpin future food and nutrition security. It is expected that the contribution of the private sector to research will grow in the coming years. The concentration of research effort in a small number of countries creates opportunities for the ‘spillover’ of innovations between countries with the same broad farming systems.

The aggregate capacity of SSA agricultural R&D institutions is growing in terms of the absolute number of researchers and real public budget. However, when compared with the agricultural sector size, the number of researchers per million economically active agricultural workers has risen only slightly from 5.7 in the early 1980s to almost 7.0 in 2011; the public agricultural research intensity (the expenditure in relation to the Agricultural GDP) has declined over the same period from 0.6 per cent to about 0.5 per cent (compared with the recommendation of 1 per cent research intensity by the New Partnership for African Development (NEPAD)).

The Forum for Agricultural Research in Africa (FARA) has launched its Science Agenda, which provides a forward-looking framework for agricultural innovation. It recognizes the diversity of African agriculture and the different technology and investment needs of various farming systems. The incorporation of the farming systems framework into the Agenda offers a template for the management of spillovers between countries sharing the same or similar farming systems.

Although many metrics of research effectiveness exist, one of the most popular is the relative increase in food crop yields or animal productivity. Another indicator of technology uptake and effectiveness is the rate of closure of yield gaps. Often, technologies are embedded in inputs, so greater use of improved seed or fertilizer is also a useful proximate indicator.

The gaps between farm yields and potential yields are very large for most African crops and livestock production (larger than most other regions of the world). Cereals, fruit, maize and rice have shown modest to strong yield growth since 1970 – this has continued for cereals until 2015. However, the areas harvested of most food crops have expanded alongside the increases in yields. For example, while the yield of maize has increased 1.2 per cent per annum since the late 1980s, the maize area has expanded by 1.5 per cent per annum.

Total crop production is forecast to increase by about 70 per cent over the period from 2010 to 2050. Major increases are expected to come from expanded production on heavy lowland soils scattered across the continent in several different farming systems, in the humid and moist subhumid tropics, and on irrigated land in the maize mixed and several other farming systems. Despite the growth in demand for small-scale irrigation, most food production in Africa will continue to come from rainfed farming.

Livestock and poultry productivity compares favourably with global averages (using the partial productivity metric of kg meat per head; see Table 1.9) except in the case of cattle. Compared with Asia and Europe, Africa has progressed poorly with an overall beef (and buffalo) carcass increase of around 12 per cent over the period 1961–2012, compared with around 40 and 76 per cent in Asia and Europe respectively. As of 2012, average carcass weight in Africa is only 65 per cent that of Europe. However, cattle and sheep recorded an overall increase in productivity between 1970 and 2010, which is expected to continue in the coming decades.

Milk and meat production is expected to triple between 2010 and 2050 in response to strong income-induced demand. Because of different demand patterns, milk production is expected to expand most rapidly in East Africa and poultry production in West and Southern Africa. The increased demand for feed grains will have knock-on effects on crop production.

Although food crop yields have begun to rise recently, African yields lag behind Asia and developed countries for a variety of abiotic, biotic and institutional reasons. Land

Table 1.9 Trends in livestock and poultry productivity in sub-Saharan Africa and globally

<i>Animal type</i>	<i>1970</i>	<i>2000</i>	<i>2010</i>
Cattle meat, kg/head	153 (182)	155 (206)	170 (212)
Sheep meat, kg/head	13.0 (15.1)	12.5 (15.8)	14.9 (15.7)
Goats meat, kg/head	11.7 (10.9)	12.6 (11.8)	12.6 (12.1)
Poultry meat, kg/head	1.0 (1.3)	1.2 (1.6)	1.2 (1.6)

Source: FAOSTAT (2015).

Note: Estimates are indicative, based on unweighted averages of the four regions of SSA. Global productivity data are shown in parentheses.

degradation and climatic variability are the two main abiotic constraints. Inorganic fertilizer consumption is very low in SSA despite the declining soil fertility noted earlier. From 2002 to 2010, inorganic fertilizer usage was low and scarcely increased (from 11.6 to 11.7 kg N/ha) compared with an increase in global nitrogen nutrient application from 57 to 69 kg N/ha (FAO 2015). The use of compost or other soil amendments is important but does not compensate for these very low levels of fertilizer use.

The adoption of improved varieties of food crops has increased since the late 2000s, especially in Eastern and Southern Africa (one example is drought-tolerant maize). It is expected that the share of modern varieties will grow, inorganic fertilizer application will increase and mechanization will substitute for labour, especially that of women. Similarly, livestock industries will intensify with improved breeds, especially in the dairy sector, and increased use of planted forages and purchased feed. The current trend of tree planting and farmer-managed natural regeneration of trees on farmlands is expected to accelerate.

Biotic constraints also contribute strongly to large productivity gaps for both crops and livestock. Cassava and maize suffer from widespread and severe virus and insect attacks (for example, cassava mosaic virus and mealy bug, and maize lethal necrosis and stem borer). Tsetse infestation is a major factor influencing the distribution of livestock between different farming systems. Tsetse tends to be concentrated in the moist subhumid and humid lowlands, and in drier areas near game reserves, so cattle numbers per household tend to be higher in the dry farming systems than in the moist systems.

The ratios of agricultural workers to farm land influence the trends in crop, livestock and tree productivity. As outlined earlier, with relatively low population pressure on land, per capita food production in Africa has increased steadily, principally through extensification, that is, expansion of cropped area (World Bank 2008), supplemented by some yield increase. In contrast, increases in Asian cereal production arose principally from yield growth. Sometimes this contrast is explained by the overly simplistic notion that the Green Revolution has not yet reached Africa. However, the reality reflects the particular combinations of available land for expansion, population pressure, poverty, farming techniques, investment in R&D, patterns of adoption of science and technology, and input markets and trade. The increasing population in Africa, and the limits to land expansion, will place pressure on households to increase yield and intensify and/or diversify farming. It is noteworthy that trends in other countries pose opportunities and

risks for Africa. For example, the cereal area has contracted in Europe as oilseeds and other high value crops were substituted for cereals, while cereal yields have increased.

Markets and trade

Agribusiness, markets and trade are all vital for agricultural development, and they require policy attention. Farming system intensification and diversification require an increasing volume of services, especially markets and suitably priced and available inputs. In fact, access to services, including markets, fundamentally influences the directions of farming systems development – sometimes this is even more important than the natural resources–population nexus. At a continental scale, the level of services and integration of markets will shape how effectively Africa responds to the challenges of the surging aggregate purchasing power of domestic consumers accompanied by changing consumer preferences.

Until recently agriculture accounted for about half of East African exports, whereas in West and Central Africa agriculture's share of total exports declined from over 70 per cent in 1961 to less than 10 per cent in 2015, partly as a consequence of the expansion of petroleum and mineral exports. Africa's principal agricultural exports are cocoa, coffee and cotton, although sugar, wine and fruits are significant exports in Southern Africa.

The proportion of agricultural products within total imports to the region has been rising. Cereal imports rose ten-fold over the period 1970 to 2010, from 6.5 Mt to 66.4 Mt, largely comprising rice and wheat imports (in contrast to cereal exports of 3–4 million Mt). If these trends continue, in 2030 the region would need to import an estimated one-sixth of its total cereal requirements. Generally, food aid has represented less than half of cereal imports; nonetheless, per capita food aid flows are larger than those to Asia and Latin America. Significantly, meat imports have increased nine-fold from 1970 to 2010, to 1.8 Mt (compared with 0.2 Mt exports).

Cereal and meat imports have surged, while exports have stagnated – despite attractive international prices and apparent, or at least potential, African competitive advantage in their production. Fortunately, intra-Africa regional trade now is growing more rapidly than international trade.

At the farming system and farm household levels, access to markets is mediated by local institutions, culture and traditions, which also influence the nature of current farming systems. Changing trade patterns can also reconfigure farming systems, for example changing trade led to the collapse of the sisal plantations in Tanzania and, later, the growth of smallholder dairy, floriculture, pigeon pea and export vegetables. However, the influence of market access is generally more nuanced, leading to practice change or an increased rate of diversification.

Access to markets can be measured in many ways, and the most common, but admittedly crude, metric is the shortest travel time to market (typically a mix of foot, animal and vehicular transport). Not surprisingly, yield gaps and farm performance gaps increase with greater distance to the national capital (which may determine access to a much broader bundle of services especially outside agriculture, including health and educational services). Naturally, transport infrastructure underpins market access. In the year 2000, SSA had only 8 km of rural roads per 100 km² of land, compared with 22 km worldwide and 25 km in Asia (FAO 2015), but global projections are that more than two-thirds of new roads planned for construction by 2040 will be located in Africa, indicating the potential for improved access to markets (but also a corresponding risk for biodiversity).

Agribusiness' principal roles are in market chains, storage, processing and distribution. Investment in input chains and agricultural service provision is essential for increased productivity and production of marketable surpluses, thus affecting intensification, diversification and growth of farm businesses. There are often high returns to investment in weak input markets such as finance, knowledge, seed, fertilizer and machinery. Once there are functioning input markets, investment in produce market chains becomes feasible. Not only are 'business-friendly' policies required but also mechanisms to mitigate business risk stemming from climate variability in rainfed farming. In most contexts, African underinvestment is greater in micro and small rural enterprises than in large corporations; it is sometimes argued that micro and small rural enterprises could underpin the next agricultural development revolution.

Policies and institutions

The perspectives shaping African agricultural policies have evolved since the food self-sufficiency goal expressed in state-led modernization in the 1960s. During the 1970s the intensification perspective of the Asian Green Revolution resonated with many African leaders. There was considerable interest in integrated rural development programs (IRDPs) which linked agricultural development to infrastructure, education and health services. During the 1970s and 1980s public agencies for R&D were strengthened. Multidisciplinary farming systems research with farmer participation was promoted and explored the 'systems-fit' and social aspects of technologies and market linkages in the complex smallholder systems. However, during the structural adjustment era of the 1980s and 1990s, much of the investment in public research and extension capacity was eroded, along with agricultural statistics and other agricultural services. The hopes that the private sector would fill the gap were not realized to the expected level (Mburathi pers. comm.). Today, it is clear that liberalization reform targeting economic growth needs to be complemented by food and nutrition security measures through agriculture as the core focus for development.

The Africa Union (AU) has encouraged improved governance at all levels. There are now many instances of successful regional, national and local institutions which stimulate sound resource management and productivity growth (UNDP 2015).

Regional agricultural development policy in Africa is principally shaped by the strategic framework of CAADP, which is aligned with the Sustainable Development Goals. In 2003, in Maputo, Mozambique, the African Heads of State and Government endorsed the CAADP as a framework to create an ambitious institutional and policy transformation in the agriculture sector. The CAADP development agenda is basically growth oriented. It aims to increase agricultural growth rates to 6 per cent per year, supported by at least 10 per cent of national budgets devoted to agriculture. CAADP focuses on four key pillars: expanding sustainable land management and reliable water control systems; improving rural infrastructure and trade-related capacities for market access; increasing food supply, reducing hunger and improving responses to food emergency crises; and improving agriculture research, technology dissemination and adoption.

Cross-cutting issues include, but are not limited to, capacity strengthening for agribusiness; academic and professional training; and improving access to information for agricultural strategy formulation. CAADP has substantially raised the profile of agriculture in national domestic politics, contributed to the development of incentive-oriented agricultural policies, facilitated the alignment of development partners to country priorities,

and has improved regional coordination. CAADP has been moving forward on both regional- and country-level processes.

Since the 2003 Maputo Declaration, African leaders have adopted various additional decisions and declarations on agriculture and food security, within the overall framework of CAADP. These decisions include, notably, the 2004 Sirte Declaration on the Challenges of Implementing Integrated and Sustainable Development in Agriculture and Water in Africa; the 2006 Resolution of the Abuja Food Security Summit; the 2007 Abuja Declaration on Fertilizer for the African Green Revolution; and the 2009 Sirte Declaration on Investing in Agriculture for Economic Growth and Food Security, among others. Reaffirming their resolve to advance the implementation of CAADP, African leaders adopted an ambitious goal that aims to eradicate hunger in Africa by 2025 within the context of a fully transformed agriculture system. The 2015 Malabo Declaration on Accelerated Agricultural Growth and Transformation for Shared Prosperity and Improved Livelihoods (and the Implementation Strategy and Roadmap) sets the scene for a comprehensive package of directives to advance agricultural transformation and root out hunger in Africa. Key to the transformation process is the CAADP Results Framework to track progress, ensure accountability and assess results.

The importance of the resilience of livelihoods was recognized by African leaders in the Malabo declaration, in which they committed to reduce the vulnerabilities of livelihoods, notably: increasing the resilience of at least 30 per cent of farm, pastoral and fisher households to climate and weather-related risks by 2025; enhancing social security for rural workers and other vulnerable social groups; and mainstreaming resilience and risk management in policies, strategies and investment plans. The achievement of these targets will require the analysis of different farming systems to identify priorities and targets, and formulate action-oriented strategies for tangible results and impact.

Ultimately, strengthened institutions, incentives (for private and appropriate collective action) and policies must be aligned with the specific agricultural growth potentials of different farming systems. Land and water policies lie at the heart of effective resource management and rural development. Land reform has been common in Southern Africa and has been one attempt to exploit the inverse farm size-productivity relationship. It is widely recognized that small farms have high productivity, provided services are available. Growth Corridor approaches are now being implemented in a number of countries, often where it is presumed that the conditions exist for mining, commercial farming, forestry and manufacturing (Weng et al. 2013), for instance, in Northern Mozambique, in Southern Tanzania's maize mixed farming systems, and in Northern Ghana's cereal-root crop mixed farming system. Recently African governments have emphasized the potential for intra-regional markets (Badiane and Collins 2016) and have supported improved infrastructure, border facilities and regulations. Increased productivity, both total factor and partial, is an important goal for the agricultural sector.

From farm household strategies to development priorities and policies

Cross-scale and system linkages

The importance of linkages between farm households, communities, landscapes and value chains was noted earlier in the chapter. The institutions which function at each level influence the decisions and management at lower levels with both positive and negative

outcomes. For example, open grazing by many communities threatens the retention of crop residues on the soil surface to reduce soil erosion and the opportunity to establish high-yielding trees. However, government policies might change community practices. For example, regulations which encourage stall feeding and the control of grazing, with a view to the revegetation of degraded watersheds, might lead to an unintended positive outcome through the reduction of grazing pressure, thus enabling the retention of crop residues in the crop fields and diversification into tree enterprises.

In any community there is heterogeneity in farm households' characteristics and behaviour. Typical patterns of farm households' differences – small and large, young and old – can often be recognized throughout a particular farming system. From an institutional and social capital perspective, knowledge of the variation in family composition, stage in life cycle, status in the community and access to external networks of traders can be an advantage in designing watershed management or technology extension programs.

Linkages across farming systems occur through seasonal and annual movement of labour, livestock, water, nutrients and agricultural produce. Capital accumulated in one system is often reinvested in another system. Natural phenomena such as wind, rainfall and runoff, and human, livestock and wildlife movement contribute to the spread of weeds, pests and diseases across systems. Land and water use practices in upstream locations affect farming systems downstream. Transport systems and infrastructure (road, rail and waterways) have traditionally aided trade in agricultural products and inputs. In addition, there are new and emerging linkages promoted by ICT, trade liberalization, new markets, advances in logistics, transport systems, knowledge management and information exchange.

Water management at the farm level has interconnected livelihood, hydrological and ecological impacts at watershed and basin scale. This is because water is both an ecosystem 'good' and a 'service'. As an ecosystem good it provides drinking water, irrigation and hydropower. It also provides a range of ecosystem services – provisioning, regulating, cultural and supporting – that are often important to poor people's livelihoods (Millennium Ecosystem Assessment 2005). The externalities created by upstream water use often lead to conflicts between upstream and downstream communities. Water governance and institutional arrangements thus influence how well conflict is resolved and how equitable water sharing is between upstream and downstream users, while maintaining adequate environmental water flows to sustain ecological functions and deliver critical ecosystem services to both rural and urban households.

Nutrient practices at the household level can have a cumulative effect on farming systems and landscapes, including whether the nutrients are traded and distributed elsewhere. Policies and other drivers, meanwhile, affect household decisions. While nutrients are fundamental to ecosystem function and farming system intensification, in practice urban areas are concentrators of nutrients, partly via food supplies from rural areas and intensive peri-urban livestock production. Recycling solid waste and food wastes can be a crucial part of rural-urban linkages.

Livestock migrations between farming systems are common including transhumance. For example, herders migrate cattle between the agropastoral farming system and higher-potential mixed farming systems, and camel herders migrate between the arid pastoral oasis and the pastoral systems. There are economic, livelihood and resilience advantages to long-distance migration. However, negative side effects include the transmission of animal disease by livestock or by wild species, especially large mammalian herbivores in Eastern Africa. Migratory birds and mammals are also major agents spreading animal and human diseases.

In terms of biotic stress, insect pests which limit crop production (in all African farming systems) also cross farming system boundaries, for example sorghum midge. Plantain and banana are other examples, as they suffer from wind-dispersed pests and diseases, for example black sigatoka. Black pod disease on cocoa is spreading across West and Central Africa. Striga (*Striga hermonthica*) is a frequent parasitic weed of sorghum, millet and maize which has spread widely across Africa.

Framework for strategic interventions

The emergence of a new set of African leaders and stronger national commitments to sustainable development, supported by the New Partnerships for Agricultural Development (NEPAD) and CAADP, have been game changers. Complementary initiatives in rural education, women's empowerment and social capital have strengthened rural institutions. These recent investments in human capital, institutions and infrastructure are now reflected in improvements to food security and economic growth and in development indicators across the region. Farming systems development can contribute to Africa's broad-based transformation in the following ways:

- *Farming systems for improved food and nutrition security.* The vast majority of the hungry and food insecure reside in rural areas. Effective food systems require productive and resilient farming systems, thus farming and food systems are a part of designing and implementing zero hunger programs and effective social security nets – and these have to be differentiated for the different farming systems. Moreover, supporting diverse integrated farming systems facilitates diverse diets, which is associated with reduced malnutrition.
- *Farming systems for poverty reduction.* The majority of rural livelihoods in African countries are dependent on natural resources, including land and water. Some 70 per cent of Africa's poorest labourers are engaged in farming activities which differ by region. Therefore, farming system intensification must be tailored to local crops and livestock, which will generally increase farm labour productivity and reduce poverty. Moreover, to be effective, rural poverty reduction strategies for enhancing job creation, gender empowerment and entrepreneurship should be linked to existing farming and livelihood systems.
- *Farming systems for industrialization.* Industrialization has been identified by African leaders as a transformational path. Agribusiness and food processing will certainly boost agriculture and can help lift rural inhabitants out of poverty. Specific commodity programs can be tailored and targeted towards particular farming systems. In-depth analysis of farming systems, with a particular focus on backward and forward linkages and value-addition, can focus the investments on commodity and agribusiness potential.
- *Farming systems for adaptation to climate change.* The majority of livelihood systems in Africa are highly vulnerable to climate variability and climate change. Therefore, systematic analysis of farming systems can facilitate targeting, diversification and enhanced resilience of particular farming systems.

Knowledge of household responses to trends and interventions within different farming systems is essential information for developing effective public priorities and policies. Indeed, household strategies and development pathways can inform and underpin

Table 1.10 Examples of strategic interventions focused on household pathways

<i>Strategy intervention areas</i>	<i>Intensification</i>	<i>Diversification</i>	<i>Increased farm/herd size</i>	<i>Increased off-farm income</i>	<i>Exit from agriculture</i>
Population, poverty and food security (increased pressure)	Labour saving technologies	Labour- spreading enterprise mixes, diet education	Resettlement	Labour markets	Migration, land and livestock markets
Natural resources and climate (reduced availability and quality)	Climate-smart agriculture	Irrigation	Land tenure, water points for livestock	Secure land rights	Land for consolidation
Energy availability and use (slowly increasing availability, volatile prices)	Biomass	Renewables	Fuel for mechanization	–	–
Human capital, knowledge sharing and gender (improving availability of information)	Extension, technology training and information sharing	Farmer training in new crops or livestock, empowerment of women	Farm management training	Labour market information	Labour market information
Science and technology (improving varieties, breeds and practices)	Technologies for water and input use efficiency	New crops and livestock	Scalable technologies	Labour saving technologies, mechanization	–
Markets and trade (improving access)	Strengthening existing input and produce chains/markets	Fostering new input and produce markets	Improved access to finance	Functioning labour markets	Land and livestock markets, employment creation especially in rural areas
Policies and institutions (strengthening public goods)	Policies assisting input availability	New markets and inputs	Land tenure and sale/leasing markets	Labour markets, decentralization, transport	Migration

choices of strategic interventions. For example, diversification would generally require more investment in new market institutions than intensification of existing enterprise patterns. Moreover, the nature of required policy interventions will differ across farming systems, depending on the availability of infrastructure and complementary services such as finance. Table 1.10 provides a framework, with illustrations, for linking farm household pathways to possible strategic interventions for each of the seven drivers discussed earlier. These are developed further in each farming system chapter, where priority strategic interventions are highlighted in terms of the expected effects on farming system structure and function.

In general, the strategies of extremely poor farm households differ from those of somewhat better-off households. At the farming system level, the combination of strategies (in proportion to household types) provides an indication of household responses to market or policy changes. The mix of strategies also informs the targeting of agricultural policies to different farming systems, and to different groups within any particular farming system. Both aspects are important for productivity and for equitable development outcomes.

Guide for readers

Chapter 2 outlines the data sources and methods which were used for the farming systems characterization. The reader will have noted that the names of the fifteen defined farming systems are not capitalized. The analyses of the major farming systems are reported in Chapters 3–16, with chapters in declining order, generally, of the population of extremely poor. Chapter 17 summarizes the key potentials and cross-cutting issues. The ways forward are presented in Chapter 18 and the conclusions in Chapter 19.

Note

Chapter 1

- 1 Conservation agriculture practices ensure minimum soil disturbance, year-round vegetative coverage of the soil surface and crop rotations, and are widely recognized as sustainable.

Chapter 2

- 1 In statistics a central tendency is a central or typical value for a probability distribution and relates to the tendency of quantitative data (or systems) to cluster around a central value.
- 2 See www.fao.org/docrep/W2962E/w2962e-03.htm.
- 3 A significant issue when modelling LGP from climate station data for Africa is the sparse distribution and maintenance of weather stations. This impacts the rigour and availability of consistent data and thereby limits identification and analysis of areas with bimodal characteristics. An alternative approach based on multi-temporal remote sensing data enables identification of start- and end-of-season parameters and as a result it is possible to identify and characterize areas with bimodal seasonal growing activity (Vrieling et al. 2013).
- 4 See www.fao.org/nr/climpag/cropfor/lgp_en.asp.
- 5 See www.fao.org/docrep/W2962E/w2962e-03.htm.
- 6 See <http://link.springer.com/article/10.1007%2Fs10584-011-0049-1>.

Chapter 3

- 1 South Africa was a notable exception where the average farm size continues to increase.
- 2 For example, in Ethiopia, where the constitutional provisions leave land ownership in the hands of the government, and farmers are only given use rights to land under long-term lease arrangements, the annual average growth in agriculture has been around 6 per cent in recent years.

- 3 SIMLESA – Sustainable Intensification of Maize–Legume Cropping Systems for Food Security in Eastern and Southern Africa Program is supported by ACIAR and managed by the International Maize and Wheat Improvement Center (CIMMYT) in collaboration with the sub-regional and national research organizations, Australian universities and other centres.
- 4 Corridor disease (*Theileria parva*) infection in cattle, which caused large losses in the mid-1990s, is considered a serious potential emerging disease (Mbizeni et al. 2013).
- 5 Nutrient quality of many of these manures is poor. The main effect is the addition of organic matter to the soil.
- 6 Inefficient bulk cargo and bagging handling operations at Dar es Salaam can increase the cost of imported fertilizer by 40 per cent by the time it has left the port.

Chapter 5

- 1 Subsystems in this chapter are essentially sub-regions distinguished by different market contexts.
- 2 Tanzania is not included in FAOSTAT (2010) and national statistics for DRC do not adequately reflect the context for the eastern highland region of DRC.
- 3 This discussion of the Kenyan highlands draws on various research reports of the Tegemeo Institute. These research reports analyse a nationally sampled panel survey of 1,275 households carried out in 1997, 2000, 2004, 2007 and 2011. This is the most comprehensive data set to analyse changes in farming systems in the post-liberalization period in Kenya.
- 4 The farm sample for the Neven study was drawn from a list of suppliers for the two largest supermarkets in Nairobi, while the sample for the Rao study was drawn from farmers in Kiambu district, oversampling for supermarket suppliers.

Chapter 7

- 1 Inland valleys are the natural water drainage channels in the landscape, serving as source of domestic water as well as production environments for long-season crops such as banana and root and tuber crops in addition to rice and vegetables.
- 2 The tops (stems and leaves) of crop plants after the crop has been harvested.

Chapter 8

- 1 The productivity of this farming system would be best measured through total factor productivity (TFP), which is a ratio of total outputs to total inputs (measured in an index form). If the ratio of total outputs to total inputs is increasing, then the ratio can be interpreted to mean that more outputs can be obtained for a given input level (Ehui and Jabbar 2002).

Chapter 9

- 1 Rainforest was defined as having an average canopy height of 35 to 40 m and a canopy coverage of more than 70 per cent.

Chapter 10

- 1 Agriculture includes crop and livestock production.
- 2 A Tropical Livestock Unit is a 250 kg animal weight-equivalent index, which allows species of various weights to be combined.
- 3 NOAA National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration of the United States.

Chapter 11

- 1 Defined as the freedom of choice and action to achieve basic material needs, health, security and good social relations (Scholes et al. 2005).

- 2 Artisanal fisheries (a term used interchangeably with small-scale or traditional fisheries, even though the scale can actually be quite large and that they have often evolved quite far from what would be strictly traditional, e.g. the use of nylon instead of natural fibre) refers to various low-technology, low-capital, fishing practices undertaken by individual households (though sometimes organised into cooperatives or associations).
- 3 In many societies cars are a status symbol, and the Mercedes Benz is a particularly powerful one across Africa, leading to terms like the Mama Benz for the comparatively rich, fish-trading women of the Gulf of Guinea and Wabenzi (literally ‘the people of the benz’) in the Swahili-influenced cultures in east and central Africa.
- 4 Schematically, living beings can be split into long-lived slow reproducing species that are adapted to stable and predictable environments, and short-lived fast reproducing species (i.e. opportunists) typical of dynamic and highly variable environments. Such species will produce very high numbers of young, most of whom will perish even in the absence of harvesting. Extracting a large proportion of such a population before it reproduces, e.g. by fishing out juveniles, will therefore not necessarily affect the capacity of the next generation to maintain the species.

Chapter 13

- 1 ‘Small-scale irrigators’ refer to farmers in a small-scale irrigation scheme of approximately 50 ha, while ‘large-scale irrigators’ refer to farmers in a community-managed irrigation scheme of more than 300 ha.

Chapter 14

- 1 Oases are intensively cultivated areas with access to water in desert or arid environments that are generally characterized by a large deficit between precipitations and evaporation linked to high temperatures and frequent dry winds (Lacoste 1987).
- 2 Oasis depressions are specific geomorphological units of spatially limited area (up to a few hectares) found in inter-dune depressions with clayish soils where oases are found.
- 3 salt that comes to the soil surface through capillary action. It is collected, at least partially separated from its muddy base, evaporated, and transported in long blocks on camel back.

Chapter 17

- 1 The land equivalent ratio measures how much more total production is increased by combining enterprises on the same piece of land versus managing them separately.

References

- Abate, T., Shiferaw, B., Menkir, A., Wegary, D., Kebede, Y., Tesfaye, K., Kassie, M., Bogale, G., Tadesse, B. and Keno, T. (2015) Factors that transformed maize productivity in Ethiopia. *Food Security* 7: 965–981.
- Allan, W. (1965) *The African Husbandman*. Oliver and Boyd, Edinburgh/London, UK. Reprinted by International African Institute, Munster, Germany.
- Badiane, O. and Collins, J. (2016) Agricultural growth and productivity in Africa: Recent trends and future outlook. In Lynam, J., Beintema, N., Roseboom, J. and Badiane, O. (eds) *Agricultural Research in Africa: Investing in Future Harvests*. International Food Policy Research (IFPRI), Washington, DC.
- Cabrera, D. and Cabrera, L. (2015) *Systems Thinking Made Simple: New Hope for Solving Wicked Problems*. Odyssean Press, New York.
- Dixon, J. (2006) *Module 4: Investments in Sustainable Agricultural Intensification*. *Agricultural Investment Sourcebook*. World Bank, Washington, DC.

- Dixon, J., Gulliver, A. and Gibbon, D. (2001) *Farming Systems and Poverty. Improving Farmer's Livelihoods in a Changing World*. FAO & World Bank, Rome and Washington, DC, www.fao.org/farmingsystems/.
- Dixon, J., Hellin, J., Li, X. and Hyman, G. (2009) Review: Forty years of farming systems classification for enhanced food security and poverty reduction. *CABI Reviews* 4 (60): 1–14.
- Dorward, A. (2009) Integrating contested aspirations, processes and policy: Development and hanging in, stepping up and stepping out. *Development Policy Review* 27: 131–146.
- FAO (2015). *The State of Food and Agriculture 2010–2011*. FAO, Rome.
- FAOSTAT (various years), FAO database, FAO, Rome. www.fao.org/faostat/en/#data
- Faures, J.-M. and Santini, G. (2008). *Water and the Rural Poor: Interventions for Improving Livelihoods in Sub-Saharan Africa*. FAO, IFAD, Rome.
- Garrity, D., Dixon, J. and Boffa, J.-M. (2017) Understanding African farming systems as a basis for sustainable intensification. In Oborn, I., vanLauwe, B., Phillips, M., Thomas, R., Brooijmans, W. and Atta-Krah, K. (eds) *Sustainable Intensification in Smallholder Agriculture: An Integrated Research Approach*. Earthscan from Routledge, Oxford, pp 58–70.
- Haggbblade, S. and Hazell, P. (eds) (2010) *Successes in African Agriculture: Lessons for the Future*. Johns Hopkins for IFPRI, Baltimore, MD.
- IFPRI (2015) 2014–2015 *Global Food Policy Report*. International Food Policy Research Institute, Washington, DC.
- InterAcademy Council. (2004) *Realizing the Promise and Potential of African Agriculture*. InterAcademy Council, Amsterdam, the Netherlands.
- Jayne, T.S. (2016) Megatrends transforming Africa's food systems: Getting ahead of the puck on policymaking. In African farmers in the digital age: Overcoming isolation, speeding up change, and taking success to scale. *Foreign Affairs*, Special Issue, New York.
- Malabo Montpellier Panel (2017) *Nourished: How Africa Can Build a Future Free from Hunger and Malnutrition*. Dakar, Senegal.
- MEA (Millennium Ecosystem Assessment) (2005) *Ecosystems and Human Well-Being: Health Synthesis*. World Resources Institute, Washington, DC.
- Norman, D.W. (2002) The farming systems approach: A historical perspective. *Proceedings of the 17th Symposium of the International Farming Systems Association*. International Farming Systems Association. Lake Buena Vista, Florida.
- Pingali, P., Bigot, Y. and Binswanger, H. (1987) *Agricultural Mechanisation and the Evolution of Farming Systems in Sub-Saharan Africa*. Johns Hopkins, Baltimore, MD.
- Qureshi, M.E., Dixon, J. and Wood, M. (2015) Public policies for improving food and nutrition security at different scales. *Food Security* 7: 393–403.
- Reardon, T. and Timmer, P. (2014) Five inter-linked transformations in the Asian agrifood economy: Food security implications. *Global Food Security* 3(2): 108–117.
- Robinson, T.P., Wint, G.R.W., Conchedda, G., Van Boeckel, T.P., Ercoli, V., Palamara, E. et al. (2014) Mapping the global distribution of livestock. *PLoS ONE* 9(5): e96084.
- Ruthenberg, H. (1971) *Farming Systems in the Tropics*. Oxford University Press, Oxford.
- Sinclair, F. (2017) Systems science at the scale of impact: Reconciling bottom up participation with the production of widely applicable research outputs. In Oborn, I., Vanlauwe, B., Phillips, M., Thomas, R., Brooijmans, W. and Atta-Krah, K. (eds) *Sustainable Intensification of Smallholder Agriculture: An Integrated Systems Research Approach*. Earthscan from Routledge, Oxford, pp. 43–57.
- United Nations Development Program (UNDP). (2015) *Africa Human Development Report (2015)*. UNDP, New York.
- Weng, L., Boedihartono, A., Dirks, P.H.G.M., Dixon, J., Lubis, M.I. and Sayer, J. (2013) Mineral industries, growth corridors and agricultural development in Africa. *Global Food Security* 2(3): 195–202.
- World Bank. (2008) *World Development Report 2008. Agriculture for Development*. World Bank, Washington, DC.

- World Bank. (2015) *World Development Report 2015. Mind, Society and Behavior*. World Bank, Washington, DC.
- Darnhofer, D., Gibbon, D. and Dedieu, B. (eds) (2012) *Farming Systems Research into the 21st Century: The New Dynamic*. Springer.
- Dixon, J. and Gulliver, A. with Gibbon, D. (2001) *Farming Systems and Poverty: Improving Farmers' Livelihoods in a Changing World*. FAO and World Bank.
- Dixon, J., Hellin, J., Li, X. and Hyman, G. (2009) Review: Forty years of farming systems classification for enhanced food security and poverty reduction. *CABI Reviews* 4(60): 1–14.
- Ellis, F. (2000) *Rural Livelihoods and Diversity in Developing Countries*. Oxford University Press.
- FAO (1996) *Agro-Ecological Zoning Guidelines, FAO Soils Bulletin 73*. Soil Resources, Management and Conservation Service, FAO Land and Water Division.
- FAOSTAT (n.d.) FAO agriculture database, FAO, Rome. www.fao.org/faostat/en/.
- Merbis, M.D. and van Wesenbeeck, C.F.A. (2012) *Africa in Maps: Data Repository of the Food Economy of Sub-Saharan Africa*. Centre for World Food Studies.
- Packham R., Petheram, J. and Murray-Prior, R. (2007) A farming systems research (FSR) as a platform for RD&E in agriculture and NRM. In *APEN Forum 2007, Capture, Consolidate and Communicate: The Changing Nature of Extension*. Canberra, 13–14 November 2007, Australasia-Pacific Extension Network, www.apen.org.au/images/PDF%20documents/APEN%20Forum07%20papers/Packham_Petheram_Prior_A_Farming_Systems_Research_%28FSR%29_As_a_Platform_for_RDE_in_Agriculture_and_NRM.pdf.
- van Velthuisen, H., Fischer, G. and Hizsnyik, E. (2013) *Technical Annex: FS Characterization with GAEZ Data*. The African Farming Systems Update Project. IIASA.
- Vrieling, A., Beurs, K.M. and Brown, M.E. (2011) Variability of African farming systems from phenological analysis of NDVI time series. *Climate Change* 109(3–4): 455–477.
- Vrieling, A., De Leeuw, J. and Said, M.Y. (2013) *Length of Growing Period over Africa: Variability and Trends from 30 Years of NDVI Time Series*. www.mdpi.com/2072-4292/5/2/982/pdf.
- Werlen, B. (2009) Structurationist geography. In Kitchin, R. and Thrift, N. (eds) *International Encyclopedia for Human Geography*. Elsevier.
- Zomer, R.J., Trabucco, A., Coe, R. and Place, F. (2009) *Trees on Farm: Analysis of Global Extent and Geographical Patterns of Agroforestry*. ICRAF Working Paper 89. World Agroforestry Centre.
- Abate, I., Shiferaw, B., Gebeyehu, S., Amsalu, B., Negash, N., Assefa, K., Eshete, M., Aliye, S. and Haggmann, J. (2011) A systems and partnership approach to agricultural research for development. *Outlook on Agriculture* 40(3): 213–20.
- Akinnifesi, F., Ajayi, O., Sileshi, G., Chirwa, P. and Chianu, J. (2010) Fertilizer tree systems for sustainable food security in the maize-based production systems of Eastern and Southern Africa Region: A review. *Journal of Sustainable Development* doi:10.1051/agron/2009058.
- Alkemade, R., Reid, R.S., van den Berg, M., de Leeuw, J. and Jeuken, M. (2012) *Assessing the Impacts of Livestock Production on Biodiversity in Rangeland Ecosystems*. www.pnas.org/cgi/doi/10.1073/pnas.10111013108.
- Andersson, J. and Giller, K. (2012) On heretics and God's blanket salesmen; Contested claims for Conservation Agriculture and the politics of its promotion in African smallholder farming. In Sumberg J. and Thompson J. (eds) *Contested Agronomy: Agricultural Research in a Changing World*. Earthscan.
- Ariga, J. and Jayne, T. (2009) Private sector responses to public sector reforms. *IFPRI Discussion Paper 00921*. IFPRI.
- Baijukya, F., de Ridder, N., Masuki, K. and Giller, K. (2005) Dynamics of banana-based farming systems in Bukoba district, Tanzania: Changes in land use, cropping and cattle keeping. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment* 106: 395–406.
- Baltenweck, I., Staal, S., Ibrahim, M.N.M., Herrero, M., Holmann, F., Jabbar, M., Manyong, V., Patil, B.R., Thornton, P., Williams, T., Waithaka, M. and de Wolff, T. (2003) *Crop-Livestock Intensification and Interactions across Three Continents: Main Report. System-wide Livestock Program*

- (SLP) *Project on Transregional Analysis of Crop-Livestock Systems*. International Livestock Research Institute (ILRI), Nairobi.
- Barrett, C. (2008) Smallholder market participation: concepts and evidence from eastern and southern Africa. *Food Policy* 32: 210–219.
- Bezabih, M., Holden, S.T. and Mannberg, A. (2016) The role of land certification in reducing gaps in productivity between male- and female-owned farms in rural Ethiopia. *Journal of Development Studies* 52(3): 360–376.
- Blackie, M. and Mann, C. (2005) The origin and the concept of the starter pack. In Levy S. (ed.) *Starter Packs: A Strategy to Fight Hunger in Developing Countries*. CABI.
- Blackie, M., Thangata, P., Kelly, V. and Makumba, W. (2006) Agricultural sustainability in Malawi: Transforming fertilizer subsidies from a short-run fix for food insecurity to an instrument of agricultural development – Technical and policy considerations. *Paper presented at the International Association of Agricultural Economists Conference*, Gold Coast, Australia. 12–18 August 2006.
- Cabral, L. and Scoones, I. (2006) What role for ministries of agriculture in the 21st century? *Policy Brief* 10. The Futures Agricultural Consortium.
- Chirwa, E., Dorward, A. and Kydd, J. (2007) *Reforming the Smallholder Coffee Sector in Malawi: A Case Study of Smallholder Commercialisation*. Working paper, Future Agricultures.
- Chirwa, E. and Kydd, J. (2005) *Study on Farmer Organisations in Smallholder Tea in Malawi*. Working paper. Imperial College London.
- Christiaensen, L., Tollens, E. and Ezedinma, C. (1995) Development patterns under population pressure: Agricultural development and the cassava-livestock interaction in smallholder farming systems in Sub-Saharan Africa. *Agricultural Systems*, 48(1): 51–72.
- Conroy, A., Blackie, M., Whiteside, A., Malewezi, J. and Sachs, J. (2006) *Poverty, AIDS and Hunger in Malawi: Breaking out of Malawi's Poverty Trap*. Palgrave Macmillan.
- Dixon, J., Gulliver, A. and Gibbon, D. (2001) *Farming Systems and Poverty: Improving Farmer's Livelihoods in a Changing World*. FAO and World Bank. www.fao.org/farmingsystems/.
- Dorward, A., Chirwa, E. and Poulton, C. (2008) Improving access to input and output markets. *Paper Prepared for the Southern Africa Regional Conference on Agriculture: Agriculture-led Development for Southern Africa – Strategic Investment Priorities for Halving Hunger and Poverty by 2015*. 8–9 December 2008, Gaborone, Botswana.
- Dorward, A. and Kydd, J. (2004) The Malawi 2002 food crisis: The rural development challenge. *Journal of Modern Africa Studies* 42: 231–240.
- Ebanyat, P., de Ridder, N., de Jager, A., Delve, R., Bekunda, M. and Giller, K. (2010) Drivers of land use change and household determinants of sustainability in smallholder farming systems of Eastern Uganda. *Population and Environment* 31(6): 474–506.
- Eicher, C.K. (2004) Flashback: Fifty years of donor aid to African agriculture. Revised version of a paper presented at an *International Policy Conference, Successes in African Agriculture: Building for the Future*, sponsored by InWent, IFPRI, NEPAD and CTA, Pretoria, South Africa, 1–3 December 2003.
- Erenstein, O., Sayre, K., Wall, P., Hellin, J. and Dixon, J. (2012) Conservation agriculture in maize and wheat based systems in the (sub)tropics: Lessons from adaptation initiatives in South Asia, Mexico and Southern Africa. *Journal of Sustainable Agriculture* 36(2): 180–206.
- FAO. (2010) An international consultation on integrated crop-livestock systems for development. *Integrated Crop Management* 13. FAO.
- FAO. (2011) *Save and Grow. A Policymaker's Guide to the Sustainable Intensification of Smallholder Crop Production*. FAO.
- FAOSTAT (undated) FAO database, FAO, Rome. www.fao.org/faostat/en/#data.
- Gabre-Madhin, E. (2007) Making markets work for the poor: the challenge in the age of globalization. In Reuben, R., Pender J. and Kuyvenhoven A. (eds) *Sustainable Poverty Reduction in Less Favoured Areas*. CABI.
- Garrity, D., Akinnifesi, F., Ajayi, O., Sileshi, G.W., Mowo, J.G., Kalinganire, A., Larwanou, M. and Bayala, J. (2010) Evergreen agriculture: A robust approach to sustainable food security in Africa. *Food Security*, 2(3): 197–214.

- Gibbon, D., Dixon, J. and Flores, D. (2007) *Beyond Drought Tolerant Maize: Study of Additional Priorities in Maize*. Report to Generation Challenge Program. Impacts, Targeting and Assessment Unit, CIMMYT.
- Giller, K., Tiftonell, P., Rufino, M., Van Wijk, M., Zingore, S., Mapfumo, P., Adjei-Nsiah, S., Herrero, M., Chikowo, R., Corbeels, M., Rowe, E., Bajjukya, F., Mwijage, A., Smith, J., Yeboah, E., van der Burg, W., Sanogo, O., Misiko, M., de Ridder, N., Karanja, S., Kaizzi, C., K'ungu, J., Mwale, M., Nwaga, D., Pacini, C. and Vanlauwe, B. (2011) Communicating complexity: Integrated assessment of trade-offs concerning soil fertility management within African farming systems to support innovation and development. *Agricultural Systems* 104: 191–203.
- Giller, K.E., Andersson, J.A., Corbeels, M., Kirkegaard, J., Mortensen, D., Erenstein, O. and Vanlauwe, B. (2015) Beyond conservation agriculture. *Frontiers in Plant Science* 6, <https://doi.org/10.3389/fpls.2015.00870>.
- Giller, K.E., Witter, E., Corbeels, M. and Tiftonell, P. (2009) Conservation agriculture and smallholder farming in Africa: The heretics' view. *Field Crops Research* 114: 23–34.
- Hoddinott, J. (2006) Shocks and their consequences across and within households in rural Zimbabwe. *Journal of Development Studies* 42(2): 301–321.
- Homann-Kee Tui, S., Tanganyika, J., Bandason, E., Maute, F., Nkomboni, D., Mpofo, N., Nisrane, F., van Rooyen, A.F., Gondwe, T., Dias, P., Ncube, S., Moyo, S. and Hendricks, S. (2012) *Optimizing Livelihood and Environmental Benefits from Crop Residues in Smallholder Crop-Livestock Systems in sub-Saharan Africa and South Asia: Southern Africa Case Study*. Regional SLP report on the socio-economic analysis. ICRISAT.
- IFA. (2002) *Water Availability and Fertilizer Use*. International Fertilizer Industry Association position paper
- Jayne, T., Yamano, T., Weber, M., Tschirley, D., Benfica, R., Neven, D., Chapoto, A. and Zulu, B. (2004) *Smallholder Income and Land Distribution in Africa: Implications for Poverty Reduction Strategies*. MSU International Development Paper No. 24. Michigan State University.
- Langyintuo, A. (2004) *Challenges of the Seed Sector of Southern Africa*. CIMMYT. www.cimmyt.org/gis/rfseedsafrica.
- Langyintuo, A., Mwangi, W., Diallo, A., MacRobert, J., Dixon, J. and Bänziger, M. (2010) An analysis of the bottlenecks affecting the production and deployment of maize seeds in Eastern and Southern Africa. *Food Policy* 35: 323–331.
- La Rovere, R., Tahirou, A., Genti, K., Zhe, G., Mwangi, W., MacRobert, J. and Dixon, J. (2013) Economic, production and poverty impacts of investing in maize tolerant to drought in Africa: An ex ante assessment. *Journal of Developing Areas* 47(2): 213–226.
- Lele, U., Pretty, J., Terry, E. and Trigo, E. (2010) Transforming agricultural research for development. *Report for the Global Conference on Agricultural Research*, 28–31 March 2010. Montpellier, France.
- Mallawaarachchi, T., Deneke, T.T. and Addai, D. (2013) *Farm Size Dynamics in East and Southern Africa: Implications for Research Priority Setting*. Final Report of a Small Research Activity, Canberra: ACIAR.
- Mallawaarachchi, T., Deneke, T.T. and Addai, D. (2014) Farm size dynamics in East and Southern Africa: Implications for research priority setting – Synthesis report. In Telahun, D. (ed.) *Farm Size Dynamics in East and Southern Africa*. Amhara Region Agricultural Research Institute (ARARI), pp. 1–30.
- Mazvimavi, K. and Twomlow, S. (2009) Socioeconomic and institutional factors influencing adoption of conservation farming by vulnerable households in Zimbabwe. *Agricultural Systems* 101(1–2): 20–29.
- Mbizeni, S., Potgieter, F.T., Troskie, C., Mans, B.J., Penzhorn, B.L. and Latif, A.A. (2013) Field and laboratory studies on Corridor disease (*Theileria parva* infection) in cattle population at the livestock/game interface of uPhongolo-Mkuze area, South Africa. *Ticks and Tick-borne Diseases* 4: 227–234.
- Mellor, J. and Dorosh, P. (2010) *Agriculture and the Economic Transformation of Ethiopia*. Ethiopia Support Strategy Programme 2 Working Paper ESSP2 010. IFPRI.

- Minde, I., Jayne, T., Crawford, E., Ariga, J. and Govereh, J. (2008) *Promoting Fertilizer Use in Africa: Current Issues and Empirical Evidence from Malawi, Zambia, and Kenya*. Working Paper for Re-SAKSS/Southern Africa.
- Moll, H.A.J. (2005) Costs and benefits of livestock systems and the role of market and non-market relationships. *Agricultural Economics* 32: 181–193.
- Morris, M., Kelly, V., Kopicki, R. and Byerlee, D. (2007) *Fertiliser Use in Africa: Lessons Learned and Good Practice*. International Bank for Reconstruction and Development.
- Mtimuni, B. (2004) *Situational Analysis of Food Insecurity and Malnutrition in Malawi*. Background Paper commissioned by the Ministry of Agriculture for the preparation of the National Food Security and Nutrition Policy.
- Nyagumbo, I., Munamati, M., Mutsamba, E.F., Thierfelder, C., Cumbane, A. and Dias, D. (2015) The effects of tillage, mulching and termite control strategies on termite activity and maize yield under conservation agriculture in Mozambique. *Crop Protection* 78: 54–62.
- Ryan, J.G. and Spencer, D.C. (2001) *Future Challenges and Opportunities for Agricultural R&D in the Semi-Arid Tropics*. ICRISAT.
- Shiferaw, B., Prasanna, B.M., Hellin, J. and Bänziger, M. (2011) Crops that feed the world 6: Past successes and future challenges to the role played by maize in global food security. *Food Security* 3: 307–327.
- Smith, J., Sones, K., Grace, D., MacMillan, S., Tarawali, S. and Herrero, M. (2013) Beyond milk, meat, and eggs: Role of livestock in food and nutrition security. *Animal Frontiers* 3(1): 6–13.
- Snapp, S. and Pound, B. (eds) (2008) *Agricultural Systems: Agroecology and Rural Innovation for Development*. Elsevier.
- Snapp, S.S., Blackie, M.J. and Donovan, C. (2003) Realigning research and extension to focus on farmers' constraints and opportunities. *Food Policy* 28: 349–363.
- Spielman, D., Byerlee, D., Alemu, D. and Kelemework, D. (2010) Policies to promote cereal intensification in Ethiopia. *Food Policy* 35: 185–194.
- Tarawali, S., Herrero, M., Descheemaeker, K., Grings, E. and Blümmel, M. (2011) Pathways for sustainable development of mixed crop livestock systems: Taking a livestock and pro-poor approach. *Livestock Science* 139(1–2): 11–21.
- Teklewold, H., Kassie, M., Shiferaw, B. and Köhlin, G. (2013) Cropping system diversification, conservation tillage and modern seed adoption in Ethiopia: Impacts on household income, agrochemical use and demand for labor. *Ecological Economics* 93: 85–93.
- Tesfaye, K., Kassie, M., Cairns, J.E., Michael, M., Stirling, C., Abate, T., Prasanna, B.M., Mekuria, M., Hailu, H., Bahadur Rahut, D., Erenstein, O. and Gerard, B. (2017) Potential for scaling up climate smart agricultural practices: Examples from Sub-Saharan Africa. In Leal Filho et al. (eds) *Climate Change Adaptation in Africa: Fostering Resilience and Capacity to Adapt*. Berlin: Springer International Publishing AG, pp. 185–203.
- Thornton, P.K., Jones, P.G., Alagarswamy, G., Andresen, J. and Herrero, M. (2010) Adapting to climate change: Agricultural system and household impacts in East Africa. *Agricultural Systems* 103: 73–82.
- Tiffen, J., Mortimore, M. and Gichuki, F. (1994) *More People, Less Erosion*. Oxford University Press.
- Tripp, R. and Rohrbach, D. (2001) Policies for African seed enterprise development. *Food Policy* 26: 147–161.
- Twomlow, S.J., Steyn, T.J. and Du Preez, C.C. (2006) Dryland farming in southern Africa. Chapter 19. In *Dryland Agriculture*, second edition. Agronomy Monograph No 23. American Society of Agronomy, pp. 769–836.
- Valbuena, D., Erenstein, O., Homann-Kee Tui, S., Abdoulaye, T., Claessens, L., Duncan, A.J., Gérard, B., Rufino, M.C., Teufel, N., van Rooyen, A. and van Wijk, M.T. (2012) Conservation agriculture in mixed crop-livestock systems: Scoping crop residue trade-offs in Sub-Saharan Africa and South Asia. *Field Crops Research* 132: 175–184.

- van Koppen, B. (2001) *A Gender Performance Indicator for Irrigation: Concepts, Tools and Applications*. Research Report 59, International Water Management Institute (IWMI).
- van Velthuizen, H., Fischer, G. and Hizsnyik, E. (2013) *Technical Annex: FS Characterization with GAEZ Data. The African Farming Systems Update Project: Farming Systems and Food Security: Priorities for Science and Policy under Global Change*. IIASA.
- Waddington, S.R., Li, X., Dixon, J., Hyman, G. and de Vicente, M.C. (2010) Getting the focus right: Production constraints for six major food crops in Asian and African farming systems. *Food Security* 2(1): 27–48.
- Wairegi, L., van Asten, P., Tenywa, M. and Bekunda, M. (2008) Abiotic constraints override biotic constraints in East African highland banana systems. *Field Crops Research* 117: 146–153.
- Abdoulaye, T. and Sanders, J.H. 2006. New technologies, marketing strategies and public policy for traditional food crops: Millet in Niger. *Agricultural Systems* 90: 272–292.
- Arnaud, C. 2016. *Jeunesses sahéliennes: dynamiques d'exclusion, moyens d'insertion*. Notes techniques no. 15 Agence Française de Développement, Paris.
- Aune, J.B. and Bationo, A. 2008. Agricultural intensification in the Sahel: The ladder approach. *Agricultural Systems* 98: 119–125.
- Bagayoko, M., Buerkert, A., Lung, G., Bationo, A. and Römheld, V. 2000. Cereal/legume rotation effects on cereal growth in Sudano-Saharan West Africa: Crop yields, soil mineral nitrogen, vesicular arbuscular mycorrhizae and nematodes. *Plant and Soil* 218(1): 103–116.
- Bagayoko, M., Maman, N., Palé, S., Sirifi, S., Taonda, S.J.B, Traore, S. and Mason, S.C. 2011. Microdose and N and P fertilizer application rates for pearl millet in West Africa. *African Journal of Agricultural Research* 6(5): 1141–1150.
- Baquedano, F., Sanders, J.H. and Vitale, J. 2010. Increasing incomes of Malian farmers: Is elimination of U.S. subsidies the only solution? *Agricultural Systems* 103: 418–432.
- Barbedette, L. 2013. *Profils d'exploitations familiales d'éleveurs en Afrique de l'Ouest et en Afrique Centrale. Synthèse illustrée par 33 études de cas de 130 études réalisées en 2010 et 2013*. Association pour la promotion de l'élevage au Sahel et en savane dans neuf pays.
- Basset, T., Blanc-Pamard, C. and Boutrais, J. 2007. Constructing locality: The terroir approach in West Africa. *Africa* 77(1): 104–129.
- Bationo, A., Hartemink, A., Lungu, O., Naimi, M., Okoth, P., Smaling, E. and Thiombiano, L. 2006. African soils: Their productivity and profitability of fertilizer use. *African Fertilizer Summit* 9–13 June 2006, Abuja, Nigeria.
- Bationo, J., Kimetu, B., Vanlauwe, M., Bagayoko, S., Koal, A. and Mkwunye, U. 2011. Comparative analysis of the current and potential role of legumes in integrated soil fertility management in west and central Africa. In Bationo A., Waswa B., Okeyo J.M., Maina F., Kihara J. and U. Mkwunye (eds) *Fighting Poverty in Sub-Saharan Africa: The Multiple Roles of Legumes in Integrated Soil Fertility Management*. Springer, pp. 117–150.
- Beintema, N.M. and Di Marcantonio, F. 2010. *Female Participation in African Agricultural Research and Higher Education: New Insights. Synthesis of the ASTI – Award Benchmarking Survey on Gender-Disaggregated Capacity Indicators*. IFPRI Discussion Paper 00957.
- Binam J.N., Place, F., Kalinganire, A., Hamade, S., Boureima, M., Tougiani, A., Dakouo, J., Mounkoro, B., Sanogo, D., Badji, M., Diop, M., Babou, A.B. and Haglund, E. 2015. Effects of farmer managed natural regeneration on livelihoods in semi-arid West Africa. *Environmental Economics and Policy Studies* 17: 543–575.
- Boffa, J.-M. 1999. *Agroforestry Parklands in Sub-Saharan Africa*. FAO Conservation Guide 34. FAO. www.fao.org/docrep/005/x3940e/X3940E00.htm.
- Boffa, J.-M. 2015. Opportunities and challenges in the improvement of the shea (*Vitellaria paradoxa*) resource and its management. Occasional Paper 24. World Agroforestry Centre.
- Brandt, M., Hiernaux, P., Rasmussen, K., Mbow, C., Kergoat, L., Tagesson, T., Ibrahim, Y.Z., Wélé, A., Tucker, J.C. and Fensholt, R. 2016. Assessing woody vegetation trends in Sahelian drylands using MODIS based seasonal metrics. *Remote Sensing of Environment* 183: 215–225.

- Bricas, N., Tchamda, C. and Mouton, F. 2016. *L'Afrique à la conquête de son marché alimentaire intérieur. Enseignements de dix ans d'enquêtes auprès des ménages d'Afrique de l'Ouest, du Cameroun et du Tchad*. AFD, collection études de l'AFD, no 12.
- Callo-Concha, D., Gaiser, T. and Ewert F. 2012. *Farming and Cropping Systems in the West African Sudanian Savanna. WASCAL Research Area: Northern Ghana, Southwest Burkina Faso and Northern Benin*. Working Paper Series 100. ZEF Working Paper Series, ISSN 1864-6638, University of Bonn.
- Cour, J.M. 2006. *Population Dynamics, Poverty Alleviation and Sustainable Development: A Demo-Economic and Spatial Framework*. World Bank Consultant, France.
- Dardel, C., Kergoat, L., Hiernaux, P., Mougou, E., Grippa, M. and Tucker, C.J. 2014. Re-greening Sahel: 30 years of remote sensing data and field observations (Mali, Niger). *Remote Sensing of Environment* 140: 350–364.
- Diakhaté, S., Gueye, M., Chevallier, T., Diallo, N.H., Assigbetse, K., Masse, D., Sembène, M., Ndour, Y., Dick, R.P. and Chapuis-Lardy, L. 2016. Soil microbial functional capacity and diversity in a millet-shrub intercropping system of semi-arid Senegal. *Journal of Arid Environments* 129: 71–79.
- Diakité, M.E. 2013. Pauvreté et vulnérabilité en Afrique de l'Ouest: quelles évolutions ? *Grain de sel* (59–62): 6–8.
- Diouf, A., Brandt, M., Verger, A., Jarroudi, M., Djaby, B., Fensholt, R., Ndione, J. and Tychon, B. 2015. Fodder biomass monitoring in Sahelian rangelands using phenological metrics from FAPAR time series. *Remote Sensing of Environment* 7: 9122–9148.
- Droy, I., Pascual, C. and Bidou, J.-E. 2014. Inégalités de genre et vulnérabilité alimentaire en milieu rural béninois: des interactions complexes. In Guetat-Bernard, H. and Saussey, M. (eds) *Genre et savoirs. Pratiques et innovations rurales au Sud*. IRD éditions, coll. A travers champs, pp. 85–115.
- FAO. 2011. *The State of Food and Agriculture 2010–2011. Women in Agriculture: Closing the Gender Gap in Development*. FAO.
- FAOSTAT (undated) FAO database, FAO, Rome. www.fao.org/faostat/en/#data.
- Gausset, Q., Yago-Ouattara, E.L. and Belem, B. 2005. Gender and tees in Pèni, southwestern Burkina Faso: Women's needs, strategies and challenges. *Danish Journal of Geography* 105(1): 67–76.
- Gnanou, A. 2013. *Interview de Pr Taonda Sibiri Jean-Baptiste: Maître assistant et chercheur à l'INERA. 2010–2018*. Réseau MARP Burkina, <http://reseaumarpbf.org/spip.php?article78&lang=fr>.
- Grandval, F., Broutin, C. and Delmas, P. 2012. Comprendre la demande des villes pour valoriser les produits locaux. *Grain de sel* 58: 5–7.
- Herrmann, S.M., Anyambab, A. and Tucker, C.J. 2005. Recent trends in vegetation dynamics in the African Sahel and their relationship to climate. *Global Environmental Change* 15: 394–404.
- Hiernaux, P., Diarra, L., Trichon, V., Mougou, E., Soumaguel, N. and Baup, F. 2009. Woody plant population dynamics in response to climate changes from 1984 to 2006 in Sahel (Gourma, Mali). *Journal of Hydrology* 375: 103–113.
- HLPE. 2011. *Land Tenure and International Investments in Agriculture*. A report by the High Level Panel of Experts on Food Security and Nutrition of the Committee on World Food Security, Rome 2011.
- Hughes, O. 2014. *Literature Review of Land Tenure in Niger, Burkina Faso and Mali: Context and Opportunities*. Catholic Relief Services.
- Ickowicz, A., Ancey, V., Corniaux, C., Duteurtre, G., Pocard-Chappuis, R., Touré, I., Vall, E. and Wane, A. 2012. Crop-livestock production systems in the Sahel: Increasing resilience for adaptation to climate change and preserving food security. In Meybeck A., J. Lankoski, S. Redfern, N. Azzu and V. Gitz (eds) *Building Resilience for Adaptation to Climate Change in the Agricultural Sector. Proceedings of a Joint FAO/OECD Workshop*. 23–24 April 2012, pp. 261–294.

- Issa, S., Jarial, S., Brah, N., Harouna, L. and Soumana, I. 2015. Use of sorghum on stepwise substitution of maize in broiler feeds in Niger. *Livestock Research for Rural Development* 27(10), www.lrrd.org/lrrd27/10/issa27212.html.
- Kaboré, S.A., Bastide, B., Traoré, S. and Boussim, J.I. 2012. Dynamique du karité, *Vitellaria paradoxa*, dans les systèmes agraires du Burkina Faso. *Bois et Forêts des Tropiques* 313(3): 47–59.
- Kaminski, J., Elbehri, A. and Samake, M. 2013. An assessment of sorghum and millet in Mali and implications for competitive and inclusive value chains. In A. Elbehri (ed.) *Rebuilding West Africa's Food Potential*. FAO/IFAD, pp. 479–501.
- Koulibaly B., Dakuo, D., Traore, O., Ouattara, K. and Lompo, F. 2016. Long-term effects of crops residues management on the soil chemical properties and yields in cotton–maizesorghum rotation system in Burkina Faso. *Journal of Agriculture Research* 5(1): 706–714.
- Land Matrix. 2018. www.landmatrix.org/en/get-the-detail/by-target-region/westernafrika/?order_by=.
- Laube, W. 2007. *Changing Natural Resource Regimes in Northern Ghana. Actors, Structure and Institutions*. ZEF Development Studies. Lit Verlag Dr. W. Hopf, Vol. 4.
- Lompo, F., Bationo, A., Sedogo, M.P., Bado, V.B., Hien, V. and Badiori, O. 2018. Role of local agro-minerals in mineral fertilizer recommendations for crops: Examples of some West Africa phosphate rocks. In Bationo, A., Ngaradoun, D., Youl, S., Lompo, F. and Opoku Fening, J. (eds) *Volume 1: Improving the Profitability, Sustainability and Efficiency of Nutrients Through Site Specific Fertilizer Recommendations in West Africa Agro-Ecosystems*. Springer, pp. 157–180.
- Mohamed, A., Urge, M. and Gebeyew, K. 2015. Effects of Replacing Maize with Sorghum on Growth and Feed Efficiency of Commercial Broiler Chicken. *Journal of Veterinary Science Technology* 6: 224. doi:10.4172/2157-7579.1000224.
- Mortimore, M.J. and Adams, W.M. 2001. Farmer adaptation, change and ‘crisis’ in the Sahel. *Global Environmental Change* 11: 49–57.
- Naughton, C.C., Lovett, P.N. and Mihelcic, J.R. 2015. Land suitability modeling of shea (*Vitellaria paradoxa*) distribution across sub-Saharan Africa. *Applied Geography* 58: 217–227.
- Nicholson, S.E., Fink, A.H. and Funk, C. 2018. Assessing recovery and change in West Africa’s rainfall regime from a 161-year record. *International Journal of Climatology* 38(10): 3770–3786.
- Nielsen, J.Ø. 2009. Drought and marriage: Exploring the interconnection between climate variability and social change through a livelihood perspective. In Hastrup, K. (ed.) *The Question of Resilience: Social Responses to Climate Change*. The Royal Danish Academy of Sciences and Letters, HFM 106, pp. 159–177.
- Nubukpo, K. 2011. *L'improvisation économique en Afrique de l'ouest. Du coton au franc Cfa*. Karthala.
- Nyamangara, J. and Nyagumbo, I. 2010. Interactive effects of selected nutrient resources and tied-ridging on plant performance in a semi-arid smallholder farming environment in central Zimbabwe. *Nutrient Cycling in Agroecosystems* 88: 103–109.
- Ouattara, B., Taonda, S.J.B., Traoré, A., Sermé, I., Lompo, F., Peak, D., Sédogo, M.P. and Bationo, A. 2018. Use of a warrantage system to face rural poverty and hunger in the semi-arid area of Burkina Faso. *Journal of Development and Agricultural Economics* 10(2): 55–63.
- Payne, W.A. 2012. *The Comprehensive Inception Phase Report for CRP 1.1 – Dryland Systems. A Multidisciplinary Characterization of Dryland Systems in West Africa and Dry Savannas, North Africa and West Asia, East and South Africa, Central Asia & Caucasus and South Asia*. CGIAR Research Program on Drylands.
- Penning de Vries, F.W.T. and Djitéye, M.A. 1982. *La productivité des pâturages sahéliens: une étude des sols, des végétations et de l'exploitation de cette ressource naturelle*. Centre for Agricultural Publications and Documentation, Wageningen, 3, 20.
- Powell, J.M., Pearson, R.A. and Hiernaux, P.H. 2004. Crop–Livestock Interactions in the West African Drylands. *Agronomy Journal* 96: 469–483.
- Pouliot, M. 2012. Contribution of “women’s gold” to West African livelihoods: The case of shea (*Vitellaria paradoxa*) in Burkina Faso. *Economic Botany* 66(3) 237–248.

- Pouliot, M. and Treue, T. 2013. Rural people's reliance on forests and the non-forest environment in West Africa: Evidence from Ghana and Burkina Faso. *World Development* 43: 180–193.
- Reij, C. and Smaling, E. 2008. Analyzing successes in agriculture and land management in Sub-Saharan Africa: Is macro-level gloom obscuring positive micro-level change? *Land Use Policy* 25: 410–420.
- Reij, C., Scoones, I. and Toulmin, C. 1996. *Sustaining the Soil: Indigenous Soil and Water Conservation in Africa*. Earthscan.
- Reij, C., Tappan, G. and Smale, M. 2009. *Agroenvironmental Transformation in the Sahel: Another Kind of "Green Revolution"*. IFPRI Discussion Paper 00914. International Food Policy Research Institute, Washington, DC.
- Rohrbach, D.D. 2004. Improving the commercial viability of sorghum and pearl millet in Africa. Unpublished.
- Rousseau, K., Gautier, D. and Wardell, A. 2017. Renegotiating access to shea trees in Burkina Faso: Challenging power relationships associated with demographic shifts and globalized trade. *Journal of Agrarian Change* 17(3): 497–517.
- Sanders, J.H. and Ouendeba, B. 2012. Intensive production of millet and sorghum for evolving markets in the Sahel. Unpublished.
- Sanders, J.H., Ouendeba, B., Ndoye, A. and Témé, N. 2018. Developing new technologies and market strategies for sorghum producers in developing countries: The Sahel case. In Rooney, B. (ed.) *Achieving Sustainable Cultivation of Sorghum, Volume 2, Sorghum Utilization Around the World*. Burleigh Dodds Science Publishing Limited.
- Sanders, J. H., Ouendeba, B., Ndoye, A., Teme, N and Traore, S. 2019. Economics of increasing sorghum productivity in Sub-Saharan Africa: The Mali case. In Zhao Z.-Y. and Dalhberg J. (eds) *Sorghum: Methods and Protocols, Methods in Molecular Biology*, vol. 1931, pp. 223–243. Springer Science+Business Media, LLC, part of Springer Nature.
- Sanders, J.H. and Shapiro, B. 2006. Policies and market development to accelerate technological change in the semi-arid zones: A focus on Sub-Saharan Africa. In Peterson, G.A., Unger, P.W. and Payne, W.A. (eds) *Dryland Agriculture*, second edition, Agronomy Monograph no. 23, pp. 879–900. American Society of Agronomy.
- Schlecht, E., Buerkert, M., Tielkes, E. and Bationo, A. 2006. A critical analysis of challenges and opportunities for soil fertility restoration in Sudano-Sahelian West Africa. *Nutrient Cycling in Agroecosystems* 76: 109–136.
- Schlecht, E., Hiernaux, P., Achard, F. and Turner, M.D. 2004. Livestock related nutrient budgets within village territories in western Niger. *Nutrient Cycling in Agroecosystems* 68: 199–211.
- Sendzimir, J., Reij, C.P. and Magnuszewski, P. 2011. Rebuilding resilience in the Sahel: Regreening in the Maradi and Zinder regions of Niger. *Ecology and Society* 16(3): 1.
- Tabo, R., Bationo, A., Diallo Maimouna, K., Kassane, O. and Koala, S. 2005. *Fertilizer Microdosing for the Prosperity of Small Scale Farmers in the Sahel: Final Report*. International Crop Research Institute for the Semi-arid Tropics (ICRISAT), Sadore, Niger.
- Tandiang, D.M., Diop, M.T., Dieng, A., Yoda, G.M.L., Cisse, N. and Nassim, M. 2014. Effect of corn substitution by sorghum grain with low tannin content on broilers production: Animal performance, nutrient digestibility and carcass characteristics. *International Journal of Poultry Science* 13(10): 568–574.
- Tougiani, A., Guero, C. and Rinaudo, T. 2009. Community mobilisation for improved livelihoods through tree crop management in Niger. *GeoJournal* 74: 377–389.
- Trichon, V., Hiernaux, P., Walcker, R. and Mougin, E. 2018. The persistent decline of patterned woody vegetation: The tiger bush in the context of the regional Sahel greening trend. *Global Change Biology* 24: 2633–2648.
- Weston, P., Hong, R., Kaboré, C. and Kull, C.A. 2015. Farmer-managed natural regeneration enhances rural livelihoods in dryland West Africa. *Environmental Management* 55(6): 1402–1417.
- Abede, T., K.F. Wiersum, F. Bongers and F. Sterck. 2006. Diversity and dynamics in home gardens of southern Ethiopia. In B.M. Kumar and P.K.R. Nair (eds) *Tropical Homegardens: A Time-Tested Example of Sustainable Agroforestry*. Springer, pp. 123–142.

- Abede, T., K.F. Wiersum and F. Bongers. 2010. Spatial and temporal variation in crop diversity in agroforestry homegardens of southern Ethiopia. *Agroforestry Systems* 78: 309–322.
- Allan, W. 1965. *The African Husbandman*. Oliver.
- Allen, S. L., O. Badiane and J.M. Ulimwengu. 2012. *Government Expenditures, Social Outcomes, and Marginal Productivity of Agricultural Inputs: A Case Study for Tanzania*. IFPRI Discussion Paper 01172. IFPRI.
- Anderson, L. and M.K. Gugerty. 2012. *Tanzania National Panel Survey. Living Standards Measurement Study: Integrated Surveys on Agriculture – Inputs*. EPAR Brief No. 179, Evans School of Public Affairs.
- Baijukya, F.P., N. de Ridder, K.F. Masuki and K.E. Giller. 2005. Dynamics of banana-based farming systems in Bukoba district, Tanzania: Changes in land use, cropping and cattle keeping. *Agriculture, Ecosystems & Environment* 106(4): 395–406.
- Barrett, C. 2008. Poverty traps and resource dynamics in smallholder agrarian systems. In R.B. Dellink and A. Ruijs (eds) *Economics of Poverty, Environment and Natural-Resource Use*. Springer, pp. 17–40.
- Bebe, B.O. 2003. Herd dynamics of smallholder dairy in the Kenyan highlands. PhD Thesis. Wageningen University.
- Benson, T., S. Kirama and O. Selejio. 2012. *The Supply of Inorganic Fertilizers to Smallholder Farmers in Tanzania: Evidence for Fertilizer Policy Development*. IFPRI Discussion Paper 01230. IFPRI.
- Brown, D.R., E.C. Stephens, J.O. Ouma, F.M. Murithi and C.B. Barrett. 2006. Livelihood strategies in the rural Kenyan highlands. *The African Journal of Agricultural and Resource Economics* 1(1): 21–35.
- Carswell, G. 2002. Farmers and fallowing: Agricultural change in Kigezi District, Uganda. *The Geographical Journal* 168(2): 130–140.
- Central Bureau of Statistics (CBS). Ministry of Planning and National Development. 2003. *Geographic Dimensions of Well Being in Kenya: Where are the Poor? From Districts to Locations. Vol 1*. CBS.
- Central Statistical Agency (CSA). 2012. *Agricultural Sample Survey 2011/2012, Volume IV, Report on Land Utilization*. Addis Ababa: Central Statistical Agency.
- Diao, X., S. Fan, S. Kanyarukiga and B. Yu. 2010. *Agricultural Growth and Investment Options for Poverty Reduction in Rwanda*. IFPRI.
- FAOSTAT. 2010. FAO database, FAO Rome. www.fao.org/faostat/en/#data.
- FEWS-NET. 2006. *Southern Nation, Nationalities and People's Region, Ethiopia: Livelihood Profiles*. FEWS-NET: Addis Ababa.
- FEWS-NET. 2008. *Preliminary Rural Livelihoods Zoning: Tanzania*. FEWS-NET: Dar es Salaam.
- Gilligan, D., J. Hoddinott and A. Seyoum Taffesse. 2008. *The Impact of Ethiopia's Productive Safety Net Programme and its Linkages*. IFPRI Discussion Paper 00839. IFPRI.
- Haggblade, S., P. Hazell and T. Reardon. 2010. The rural non-farm economy: Prospects for growth and poverty reduction. *World Development* 38(10): 1429–1441.
- Haileslassie, A., J.A. Priess, E. Veldkamp and J.P. Lesschen. 2006. Smallholders' soil fertility management in the Central Highlands of Ethiopia: Implications for nutrient stocks, balances and sustainability of agroecosystems. *Nutrient Cycling in Agroecosystems* 75: 135–146.
- Hazell, P. 2011. Five big questions about five hundred million small farms. *Paper Presented at the IFAD Conference on New Directions for Smallholder Agriculture*, 24–25 January, 2011. IFAD.
- Headley, D., M. Dereje, J. Ricker-Gilbert, A. Josephson and A. Seyoum Taffesse. 2013. *Land Constraints and Agricultural Intensification in Ethiopia: A Village-Level Analysis of High-Potential Areas*. IFPRI Discussion Paper 01290. IFPRI.
- Hemp, A. and C. Hemp. 2009. Environment and worldview: The Chaga homegardens, part 1 – Ethnobotany and ethnozoology. In T. Clack (ed.) *Culture, History and Identity: Landscapes of Inhabitation in the Mount Kilimanjaro Area, Tanzania*. Archaeopress.
- Jaramillo J., E. Muchugu, F.R. Vega, A. Davis, C. Borgemeister et al. 2011. Some like it hot: The influence and implications of climate change on coffee berry borer (*Hypothenemus hampei*) and coffee production in east Africa. *PLoS ONE* 6(9): e24528. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0024528.

- Jayne, T.S., J. Chamberlin and M. Muyanga. 2012. *Emerging Land Issues in African Agriculture: Implications for Food Security and Poverty Reduction Strategies*. Center on Food Security and the Environment. Stanford Symposium Series on Global Food Policy and Food Security in the 21st Century. Stanford University.
- Kaspersen, L.L. and T.H.Y. Foy. 2010. *Price Transmission for Agricultural Commodities in Uganda: An Empirical Vector Autoregressive Analysis*. USSP Working Paper No 6. IFPRI.
- Kathiresan, A. 2011. *Strategies for Sustainable Crop Intensification in Rwanda: Shifting Focus from Producing Enough to Producing Surplus*. Ministry of Agriculture and Animal Resources, Republic of Rwanda.
- Keating, B.A., P.S. Carberry and J. Dixon. 2013. Agricultural intensification and the food security challenge in sub Saharan Africa. In B. Vanlauwe, P. van Asten and G. Blomme (eds) *Agro-Ecological Intensification of Agricultural Systems in the African Highlands*. Earthscan.
- Kibaara, B., J. Ariga, J. Olwande and T.S. Jayne. 2008. *Trends in Kenyan Agricultural Productivity 1997–2007*. Tegemeo Institute of Agricultural Policy and Development.
- Kimendu, S.C. and D. Tschirley. 2008. *Agriculture and Livelihood Diversification in Kenyan Rural Households*. Tegemeo Institute of Agricultural Policy and Development.
- Klapwijk, C.J., C. Bucagu, M.T. van Wijk, H.M.J. Udo, B. Vanlauwe, E. Munyanziza and K.E. Giller. 2014. The 'one cow per poor family' programme: Current and potential fodder availability within smallholder farming systems in southwest Rwanda. *Agricultural Systems* 131: 11–22.
- Kuhlmann, K., S. Sechler and J. Guinan. 2011. *Africa's Development Corridors as Pathways to Agricultural Development, Regional Economic Integration and Food Security in Africa*. The Aspen Institute.
- Liniger, H., J. Gikonyo, B. Kiteme and U. Wiesmann. 2005. Assessing and managing scarce tropical mountain water resources: The case of Mount Kenya and the semi-arid upper Ewaso Ng'iro Basin. *Mountain Research and Development* 25(2): 163–173.
- Losch, B., S. Fréguin-Gresh and E.T. White. 2012. *Structural Transformation and Rural Change Revisited: Challenges for Late Developing Countries in a Globalizing World*. African Development Forum Series. World Bank.
- Majule, A. 2010. The impact of land management practices on soil quality and implications on smallholder productivity in Southern Highland Tanzania. *Environmental Economics* 1(1): 59–67.
- Matsumoto, T. and T. Yamano. 2009. *Soil Fertility, Fertilizer and the Maize Green Revolution in East Africa*. Policy Research Working Paper 5158. World Bank.
- Minot, N. 2010. Staple food prices in Tanzania. *Paper for COMESA Policy Seminar: Variation in Staple Food Prices: Causes, Consequences and Policy Options*. Maputo, 25–26 January.
- Minten, B., D. Stifel and S. Tamru. 2012. *Structural Transformation in Ethiopia: Evidence from Cereal Markets*. IFPRI.
- Misana, S.B., C. Sokoni and M.J. Mbonile. 2012. Land-use/cover changes and their drivers on the slopes of Mount Kilimanjaro, Tanzania. *Journal of Geography and Regional Planning* 5(6): 151–164.
- Ndayambaje, J.D. 2013. *Trees and woodlots in Rwanda and their role in fuelwood supply*. Unpublished PhD Thesis. Wageningen University.
- Neven, D., M.M. Odera, T. Reardon and H. Wang. 2009. Kenyan supermarkets, emerging middle-class horticultural farmers, and employment impacts on the rural poor. *World Development* 37(11): 1802–1811.
- Okumu, M.O., P.J.A. van Asten, E. Kahangi, S.H. Okech, J. Jefwa and B. Vanlauwe. 2011. Production gradients in smallholder banana (cv. Giant Cavendish) farms in Central Kenya. *Scientia Horticulturae* 127: 475–481.
- Ouma, E. and J. Jagwe. 2010. Banana value chains in central Africa: Constraints and opportunities. *Paper Presented at the Joint 3rd African Association of Agricultural Economists Conference*, Cape Town, 19–23 September.
- Puhalla, J.M. 2009. *Land use and agricultural intensification in Mugandu wetland, Kabale District, Uganda*. PhD dissertation. University of Florida.
- Rao, E.J.O. and M. Qaim. 2010. Supermarkets, farm household income and poverty: Insights from Kenya. *Contributed Paper Presented at the Joint 3rd African Association of Agricultural Economists*

- (AAAE) and 48th Agricultural Economists Association of South Africa (AEASA) Conference, Cape Town, South Africa, 19–23 September.
- Ridley, F.V. 2010. The past and future climatic suitability of arabica coffee (*Coffea arabica* L.) in East Africa. MSc Thesis. University of Durham.
- Ruthenberg, H. 1971. *Farming Systems in the Tropics*. Oxford: Clarendon Press.
- Schmidt, E. and P. Dorosh. 2009. *A Sub-National Hunger Index for Ethiopia: Assessing Progress in Regional-Level Outcomes*. Discussion Paper No ESSP2 OO5. IFPRI.
- Schmidt, E. and M. Kedir. 2009. *Urbanization and Spatial Connectivity in Ethiopia: Urban Growth Analysis Using GIS*. ESSP II Working Paper 3. Addis Ababa, Ethiopia: International Food Policy Research Institute / Ethiopia Strategy Support Program II.
- Shreffler, K. and F. Nii-Amoo Dodoo. 2009. The role of intergenerational transfers, land, and education in fertility transition in rural Kenya: The case of Nyeri district. *Population and Environment* 30(3): 75–92.
- Stephens, E.C., C.F. Nicholson, D.R. Brown, D. Parsons, C.B. Barrett, J. Lehmann, D. Mbugua, S. Ngoze, A.N. Pell and S.J. Riha. 2012. Modeling the impact of natural resource-based poverty traps on food security in Kenya: The Crops, Livestock and Soils in Smallholder Economic Systems (CLASSES) model. *Food Security* 4: 423–439.
- Stern, D.I., P.W. Gething, C.W. Kabaria, W.H. Temperley, A.M. Noor et al. 2011. Temperature and malaria trends in highland east Africa. *PLoS ONE* 6(9): e24524. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0024524.
- Taffesse, A.S., P. Dorosh and S. Asrat. 2011. *Crop Production in Ethiopia: Regional Patterns and Trends*. IFPRI.
- Tittonell, P. and K.E. Giller. 2013. When yield gaps are poverty traps: The paradigm of ecological intensification in African smallholder agriculture. *Field Crops Research* 143: 76–90.
- Tittonell, P., B. Vanlauwe, P.A. Leffelaar, K.D. Shepherd and K.E. Giller. 2005. Exploring diversity in soil fertility management of smallholder farms in western Kenya. II: Within-farm variability in resource allocation, nutrient flows and soil fertility status. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment* 110: 166–184.
- Wairegi, L.W.I. and P.J.A. Asten. 2010. The agronomic and economic benefits of fertilizer and mulch use in highland banana systems in Uganda. *Agricultural Systems* 108: 543–550.
- Waithaka, M.M., P.K. Thornton, M. Herrero and K.D. Shepherd. 2006. Bio-economic evaluation of farmers' perceptions of viable farms in western Kenya. *Agricultural Systems* 90: 243–271.
- Winter, J.C. 2009. Environment and worldview: The Chaga homegardens – part II: the social history of the Chagga in outline with special reference to the evolution of the homegardens. In T. Clack (ed.) *Culture, History and Identity: Landscapes of Inhabitation in the Mount Kilimanjaro Area, Tanzania*. Oxford: Archaeopress.
- World Bank. 2011. *Rwanda Economic Update: Seeds for Higher Growth, Spring Edition*. The World Bank.
- World Bank. 2015. Education Statistics (EdStat). <http://databank.worldbank.org/Data/Views/VariableSelection/SelectVariables.aspx?source=Education%20Statistics>.
- Yamano, T. and A. Arai. 2010. *The Maize Farm-Market Price Spread in Kenya and Uganda*. GRIPS Discussion Paper 10–25. Tokyo: National Graduate Institute for Policy Studies.
- Yamano, T. and Y. Kijima. 2010. *Market Access, Soil Fertility, and Income in East Africa*. GRIPS Discussion Papers 10–22. Tokyo: National Graduate Institute for Policy Studies.
- Adjei, O.E., Aikins, S.H.M., Boahen, P., Chand, K., Der, I., Lu, M., Mkrtumyan, V., Samaraweera, S.D. and Teklu, A. (2003) *Combining Mechanization with Conservation Agriculture in the Transitional Zone of Brong-Ahafo, Ghana*. Working Document Series 108, Ghana; www.icra-edu.org/objects/public_en/Ghana2003FS_reprt.pdf.
- Adjei-Nsiah, S., Issaka, R.N., Fenning, J.O., Mapfumo, P., Anchirina, V. and Giller, K.E. (2010) Farmers' perceptions of climate change and variability and existing opportunities for adaptation in Wenchi area of Ghana. *The International Journal of Climate Change: Impact and Responses*, vol 2, no 2, pp. 49–60.

- Adjei-Nsiah, S., Leeuwis, C., Giller, K.E., Sakyi-Dawson, O., Cobbina, J., Kuyper, T.W., Abekoe, M. and Van Der Werf, W. (2004) Land tenure and differential soil fertility management practices among native and migrant farmers in Wenchi, Ghana: Implications for interdisciplinary action research. *Njas-Wageningen Journal of Life Sciences*, vol 52, pp. 331–348.
- Adjei-Nsiah, S., Leeuwis, C., Sakyi-Dawson, O., Giller, K.E. and Kuyper, T.W. (2007) Exploring diversity among farmers for orienting interdisciplinary action research on cropping system management in Wenchi, Ghana: the significance of time horizons. *International Journal of Agricultural Sustainability*, vol 5, pp. 176–194.
- Africa Progress Panel (APP) (2015) *Power, People, Planet: Seizing Africa's Energy and Climate Opportunities – Africa Progress Report*. www.africaprogresspanel.org.
- Agwu, A.E. and Anyaeche, C.L. (2007) Adoption of improved cassava varieties in six rural communities in Anambra State, Nigeria. *African Journal of Biotechnology*, vol 6, no 2, pp. 89–98.
- Agyemang-Bonsu, W.K., Minia, Z., Dontwi, J., Dontwi, I.K., Buabeng, S.N., Baffoe-Bonnie, B. and Frimpong, E.B. (2008) *Ghana Climate Change Impacts, Vulnerability and Adaptation Assessments*. Accra: Environmental Protection Agency.
- Akinbade S.A., Hanna, R., Nguenkam, A., Njukwe, E., Fotso, A., Doumstap, A., Ngeve, J., Tenku S.T.N. and Lava Kuma, P. (2010) First report of the Esat African cassava mosaic virus-Uganda (EACMV-UG) infecting cassava (*Manihot esculenta*) in Cameroon. *New Disease Reports*, vol 21, pp. 22.
- Asamoah Larbi (2012) *Sierra Leone Country Pasture/Forage Resources Profile*. www.fao.org/ag/agg/AGPC/doc/pasture/forage.htm.
- Asumugha, G.N., Njoku, M.E., Okoye, B.C., Aniedu, O.C., Ogbonna, M.C., Anyaegbunam, H.N., Akinpelu, O.A., Ibeagi, O. and Amaefula, A. (2009) An analysis of the supply for seed yams in Nigeria. *African Journal of Business Management* vol. 3, no. 1, pp. 28–31.
- Badu Apraku, B., Fakorade, M.A.B., Ouedrago, B., Carsky, R.J. and Menkin, A. (2003) Maize revolution in west and central Africa. *Proceedings of a Regional Maize Workshop*, IITA-Cotonou, Benin, 14–18 May 2001. WECAMAN/IITA.
- Berga, L. and Nsumba, J. (2005) *PRAPACE Annual Report for the Period October, 2003 to September, 2004*. Kampala: CIP/PRAPACE.
- Bezabih, M. and Holden, S. (2010) *The Role of Land Certification in Reducing Gender Gaps in Productivity in Rural Ethiopia*. EFD Discussion Paper 10–23. Environment for Development.
- Byamugisha, F.F.K. (2013) *Securing Africa's Land for Shared Prosperity: A Programme to Scale Up Reforms and Investments*. Africa Development Forums series. World Bank.
- Cassava Enterprise Development Project (CEDP) (2010) *Impact Assessment Evaluation of Cassava Enterprise Development Project (CEDP) Implemented in Akwa Ibom, Cross River and River States, Nigeria*. Technical Report submitted to IITA Ibadan, Nigeria, May 2010.
- Deininger, K., Ali, D.A. and Alemu, T. (2011) Impacts of land certification on tenure security, investment, and land market participation: Evidence from Ethiopia. *Land Economics*, vol 87, no. 2, pp. 312–334.
- Devereux, S. (2001) Livelihood insecurity and social protection: a re-emerging issue in rural development. *Development Policy Review*, vol 19, no 4, pp. 507–509.
- Dittoh, S., Omotesho, A., Belemvire, A., Akumba, M. and Haider, K. (2012) *Improving the Effectiveness, Efficiency and Sustainability of Fertilizer Use in Sub-Saharan Africa*. Policy Research Paper 3, Global Development Network, Global Research Project, Supporting Policy Research to Inform Agricultural Policy in Sub-Saharan Africa and South Asia, New Delhi, India.
- Dixon, J.A., Gibbon, D.P. and Gulliver, A. (2001) *Farming Systems and Poverty: Improving Farmers' Livelihoods in a Changing World*. FAO and World Bank.
- Donatelli, M., Rosenzweig, C., Stockle, C.O. and Tubiello, F.N. (2000) Effects of climate change and elevated CO₂ on cropping systems: Model predictions at two Italian locations. *European Journal of Agronomy*, vol 13, pp. 179–189.
- Edem, I.D. and Nkereuwem, M.E. (2015) Crucial roles of tuber crops and the development activities in the global food system. *American Journal of Agricultural Science*, vol 2, no 2, pp. 42–49.

- Egesi, C., Olasanni, B., Mbanaso, E.N.A., Okogbenin, E., Ekwe, K.C., Fregene, M. and Nwosu, K.I. (2011) Biofortification of cassava for enhanced food and nutrition security. In C.O. Amadi, K.C. Ekwe, G.O. Chuku, A.O. Olojede and C.N. Egesi (eds) *Root and Tuber Crops Research for Food Security and Empowerment*. Snapp Press Ltd, pp 163–176.
- Ekwe, K.C. (2012) Cassava stem multiplication technology: A viable option for industry development. *Knowledge for development*. Observatory in science, technology and innovation for ACP agricultural and rural development, CTA and S&T. www.Knowledge.cta.int/Dossiers/Commodities/Cassava/Feature-articles/Cassava-Stem-Multiplication-Technology-a-Viable-Option-for-Industry-Development.
- FAO (2011) *The State of Food and Agriculture 2010–2011*. FAO.
- FAOSTAT (undated) FAO database, FAO, Rome. www.fao.org/faostat/en/#data.
- Fermont, A.M. (2006) Cassava and soil fertility in intensifying smallholder farming systems of East Africa. PhD Thesis, Wageningen University.
- Haggblade, S. et al. (2012) Cassava commercialization in Southeastern Africa. *The Journal of Agribusiness in Developing and Emerging Economies*, vol 2, no 1, pp. 4–40.
- Hilderink, H. et al. (2012) *Food Security in Sub-Saharan Africa: An Exploratory Study*. PBL Netherlands Environmental Assessment Agency.
- Horton, D. (1988) *Underground Crops: Long-Term Trends in Production of Roots and Tubers*. Winrock International.
- IAC (InterAcademy Council) (2004) *Realising the Promise and Potential of African Agriculture*. Inter Academy Council, Amsterdam.
- IFPRI (International Food Policy Research Institute) (2004) *Annual Report (2003–2004)*. IFPRI, Washington DC.
- IITA (International Institute of Tropical Agriculture) (2012) *Yam*. www.IITA.org/yam.
- Islam, M.J., Haque, M.Z., Majunde, U.K. and Hossain, M.F. (2000) Growth and yield potential of nine genotypes of sweet potato. *Pakistan Journal of Biological Sciences*, vol 5, pp. 537–538.
- Jones, J.H.M. and Sakyi-Dawson, O. (2001) Linking formal and informal financial intermediaries in Ghana: A way to increase women's access to financial services? In B. Lemire, R. Pearson and G. Camphell (eds) *Women and Credit, Researching the Past, Refiguring the Future*. Oxford University Press.
- Kamau, J., Melis, R., Laing, M., Derera, J., Shanahan, P., Eliud, C. and Ngugi, K. (2011) Farmers' participatory selection for early bulking cassava genotypes in semi-arid Eastern Kenya. *Journal of Plant Breeding and Crop Science*, vol 3, no. 3, pp. 44–52.
- Knipscheer, H., Ezedinma, C., Kormawa, P., Asumugha, G., Makinde, K., Okechukwu, R. and Dixon, A. (2007) *Opportunities in the Industrial Cassava Market in Nigeria*. UNIDO/International Institute of Tropical Agriculture (IITA).
- Langeveld, H., Quist-Wessel, F. and Dixon, J.M. (2015) *An Alternative Approach for Assessing Indirect Land Use Change (ILUC) Effects: Linking Biomass Availability, Land Cover and Cropping Intensity*. Poster, IEA Bioenergy Conference, 27–29 October 2015, Berlin, Germany.
- Lulombo, S., Bidiaka, M., Tata, H., Koko, N., Lutete, D., Khonde, M. and Makoko, E.N. (2002) Cassava sub-sector analysis in Democratic Republic of Congo. In J.M. Mbwika, P. Ntawuruhunga, C. Kariuki and A. Makhoka (eds) *Proceedings of the Regional Workshop on Improving the Cassava Sub-Sector*. ICRAF, Nairobi, Kenya, 8–12 April 2002, pp 26–34.
- MoFA (2007) *Food and Agriculture Sector Development Policy (FASDEP II)*. Ministry of Food and Agriculture, Accra, Ghana.
- NAELS (2009) *National Agricultural Extension Liaison Services Annual Performance Evaluation, 2009 Wet Season Report*. NAELS.
- Njoku, D., Egesi, C.N., Offei, S.K., Asante, I., Vernon, G., Okogbenin, E., Ekwe, K.C., Ezulike, T.O., Eke-Okoro, O.N. and Nwosu, K.I. (2011) Prospects for biofortification of farmers' preferred cassava varieties in Nigeria. In C.O. Amadi, K.C. Ekwe, G.O. Chuku, A.O. Olojede and C.N. Egesi (eds) *Root and Tuber Crops Research for Food Security and Empowerment*. Snapp Press Ltd, pp. 163–176.

- Nweke, F.I. (2004) *Processing Potential for Cassava Production Growth in Sub Saharan Africa*. COSAC working paper No.II, collaborative study of cassava in Africa, IITA.
- Nweke, F. and Haggblade, S. (2010) The cassava transformation in west and central southern Africa. In S. Haggblade and P.B.R. Hazell (eds) *Successes in African Agriculture: Lessons for the Future*. Johns Hopkins University Press.
- Nweke, F.I., Spencer, D.S.C and Lynam, J.K. (2002) *The Cassava Transformation: Africa's Best-Kept Secret*. Michigan State University Press.
- Nwosu, K.I. and Asumugha, G.N. (2003) Export potentials for Nigerian cassava and cassava products in the international market. *Paper Presented at a Workshop on Nigerian Export Promotion, Nigerian Export Promotion Council, Enugu Zone, Niger Heritage Hotel, Onitsha, Nigeria, 11 September 2003*.
- Ofuoku, A.U. and Isife, B.I. (2009) Causes, effects and resolution of farmers–nomadic cattle herders conflict in Delta State, Nigeria. *International Journal of Sociological Anthropology*, vol 1, no 2, pp. 47–54.
- Okogbenin, E., Egesi, C.N. and Fregene, M. (2011) Marker assisted breeding in cassava. In C.O. Amadi, K.C. Ekwe, G.O. Chuku, A.O. Olojede and C.N. Egesi (eds) *Root and Tuber Crops Research for Food Security and Empowerment*. Snapp Press Ltd, pp. 125–144.
- O'Sullivan, J.N. (2010) *Yam Nutrition, Nutrient Disorders and Soil Fertility Management*. ACIAR Monograph No. 144. Australian Centre for International Agricultural Research.
- Phillips, J.P., Taylor, D.S., Sanni, L and Akorada, M.O. (2004) *A Cassava Industrial Revolution in Nigeria: The Potential for a New Industrial Crop*. International Fund For Agricultural Development and Food and Agricultural Organization.
- PNDRT (Programme National de Developpement des Racines et Tubercules) (2005) *Rapport des etudes de base dans les cinq antennes*. Electronic file. Ministry of Agriculture and Rural Development.
- Saïdou, A., Adjei-Nsiah, S., Kossou, D., Sakyi-Dawson, O. and Kuyper, T.W. (2007) Sécurité foncière et gestion de la fertilité des sols: études de cas au Ghana et au Bénin. *Cahiers Agricultures*, vol 16, no 5, pp. 1–8.
- Saïdou, A., Kuyper, T.W., Kossou, D., Tossou, R. and Richards, P. (2004) Sustainable soil fertility management in Benin: learning from farmers. *NJAS-Wageningen Journal of Life Sciences*, vol 52, pp. 349–369.
- Salifu, A.B. (2011) Contribution of research to the development of root and tuber crops industry in Ghana. *A Paper Presented during West African Agricultural Productivity Program-West Africa Root and Tuber Crops Conference, Accra, 12–14 September 2011*.
- Soro, D., Dao, D., Girardin, O., Bi, T.T. and Tschannen, B.T. (2010) Adoption d'innovations en agriculture en Cote d'ivoire: cas de nouvelles varieties d'igname. *Cahiers Agricultures*, vol 9, no 6, pp. 403–410.
- Tesfaye, A., Lemaga, B., Mwakasendo, J.A., Nzohabonayoz, Z., Mutware, J., Wanda, K.Y., Kinyae, P.M., Ortiz, G., Crissman, C. and Thiele, G. (2010) *Markets for Fresh and Frozen Potato Chips in the ASARECA Region and the Potential for Regional Trade: Ethiopia, Tanzania, Rwanda, Kenya, Burundi and Uganda*. International Potato Center (CIP), Lima, Peru. Working Paper 2010–1.
- Tittonell, P. and Giller, K.E. (2013) When yield gaps become poverty traps: The paradigm of ecological intensification in African smallholder agriculture. *Field Crops Research*, vol 143, pp. 76–90.
- Vanlauwe, B., Mutuo, P., Mahungu, N. and Pypers, P. (2013) Boosting the productivity of cassava-based systems in DR Congo. *Best Practice*, 8, IITA.
- van Velthuizen, H., Fischer, G. and Hiznyik, E. (2013) *Technical Annex: FS Characterization with GAEZ Data. The African Farming Systems Update Project: Farming Systems and Food Security in Africa – Priorities for Science and Policy under Global Change*. IIASA.
- World Bank (2008) *World Development Report: Agricultural for Development*. World Bank.
- World Bank (2011) *World Development Report 2012: Gender Equality and Development*. World Bank.
- Altieri, M.A. and Nicholls, C.I. (2004) *Biodiversity and Pest Management in Agroecosystems*, second edition. The Haworth Press.

- Amaza, P., Abdoulaye, T., Kwaghe, P. and Tegbaru, A. (2009) Changes in Household Food Security and Poverty Status in PROSAB Area and Southern Borno State, Nigeria. IITA.
- Annan, Kofi (2014) Foreword. In Grain Fish Money Africa Progress Report 2014, Africa Progress Panel. www.afdb.org/fileadmin/uploads/afdb/Documents/Project-and-Operations/Africa_Progress_Report_2014.PDF.
- Bamire, A. S., Abdoulaye, T., Sanogo, D. and Langyintuo, A. (2010) 'Characterization of maize producing households in the dry savanna of Nigeria'. *OAU-IITA Publication* produced as part of the Drought Tolerant Maize for Africa (DTMA) Project Household Report: Household Survey. DTMA Country Report – Nigeria.
- Bruntrup, M. (2011) 'Detrimental land grabbing or growth poles? Determinants and potential development effects of foreign direct land investments'. *Technikfolgenabschätzung – Theorie und Praxis* 20(1): 3–12.
- Byerlee, D. and Eicher, C. (eds) (1997) *Africa's Emerging Maize Revolution*. Lynne Rienner Publishers.
- Collinson, M. (ed.) (2000) *A History of Farming Systems Research*. CABI.
- Cotula, L. (2011) *Land Deals. What's in the Contracts?* International Institute for Environment and Development (IIED).
- Coulibaly, L. (2014) *West Africa Cotton Producers Forecast Bumper 2014/15 Crop*. www.reuters.com/article/2014/10/16/cotton-westafrica-forecast-idUSL6N0S92AR20141016.
- Dixon, J., Gulliver, A. and Gibbon, D. (2001) *Farming Systems and Poverty: Improving Farmers' Livelihoods in a Changing World*. FAO and World Bank.
- FAO. (2008) 'Investing in sustainable crop intensification: The case for soil health', Report of the International Technical Workshop, FAO. *Integrated Crop Management* Vol. 6.
- FAO. (2009) 'Enhancing crop-livestock systems in Conservation Agriculture for sustainable production intensification: A farmer discovery process going to scale in Burkina Faso'. *Integrated Crop Management* Vol. 7. FAO.
- FAO. (2011a) *The State of the World's Land and Water Resources for Food and Agriculture (SOLAW): Managing Systems at Risk*. FAO.
- FAO. (2011b) *Save and Grow: A Policymaker's Guide to the Sustainable Intensification of Smallholder Crop Production*. FAO.
- FAOSTAT. (undated) FAO database, FAO, Rome. www.fao.org/faostat/en/#data.
- Fernández-Rivera, S., Okike, O., Manyong, V., Williams, T.O., Kruska, R.L. and Tarawali, S.A. (2004) 'Classification and description of the major farming systems incorporating ruminant livestock in West Africa'. In Williams, T.O., Tarawali, S., Hiernaux, P. and Fernández-Rivera, S. (eds) *Sustainable Crop-Livestock Production for Improved Livelihoods and Natural Resource Management in West Africa*. Proceedings of an international conference held at the International Institute for Tropical Agriculture (IITA) Ibadan, Nigeria, 19–22 November 2001. ILRI, Nairobi, Kenya, pp. 89–122.
- Fofana, M., Abdoulaye, T., Coulibaly, N., Sanogo, D. and Langyintuo, A. (2011) 'Characterization of maize producing households in the dry savanna of Mali'. *Country Report: Mali*. IITA.
- Franke, A.C. and de Wolf, J.J. (2011) *N2Africa Baseline Report*. www.N2Africa.org.
- Garrity, D.P., Mowo, J.G., Akinnifesi, F.K., Ajayi, O.C., Weldesemayat, S.G., Kalinganire, A., Bayala, J. and Larwanou, M. (2010) 'Evergreen agriculture: A robust approach to sustainable food security in Africa'. *Food Security* 2: 197–214.
- HLPE. (2011) *Land Tenure and International Investments in Agriculture*. A report by the High Level Panel of Experts (HLPE) on Food Security and Nutrition, FAO.
- Holden, S. and Quiggin, J. (2015) *Climate Risk and State-Contingent Technology Adoption: The Role of Risk Preferences and Probability Weighting*. Working Paper No. 15 / 2015. www.researchgate.net/publication/282875706.
- Howeler, R., Lutaladio, N.B. and Thomas, G. (2013) *Save and Grow Cassava: A Guide to Sustainable Production Intensification*. FAO.
- IAC. (2004) *Realizing the Promise and Potential of African Agriculture*. InterAcademy Council, Amsterdam.

- IFAD/FAO. (2010) *Global Consultation on Cassava as a Potential Bioenergy Crop*. IFAD and FAO.
- Junior, R.C., de Araújo, A.G. and Llanillo, R.F. (2012) *No-Till Agriculture in southern Brazil: Factors that Facilitated the Evolution of the System and the Development of the Mechanization of Conservation Farming*. FAO and IAPAR.
- Kamara, A.Y., Ajeigbe, H.A., Omolgui, L.O. and Chikoye, D. (2012) 'Intensive cereal-legume-livestock systems in West African dry savanna'. In Hershey, C.H. (ed.) *Issues in Tropical Agriculture Eco-Efficiency: From Vision to Reality*. CIAT, pp. 1–17.
- Kassam, A., Basch, G., Friedrich, T., Shaxson, F., Goddard, T., Amado, T., Crabtree, B., Hongwen, L., Mello, I., Pisante, M. and Mkomwa, S. (2013) 'Sustainable soil management is more than what and how crops are grown'. In R. Lal and R.A. Stewart (eds) *Principles of Soil Management in Agro-ecosystems. Advances in Soil Science*. CRC Press.
- Kassam, A., Derpsch, R. and Friedrich, T. (2018) Global spread of Conservation Agriculture. *Journal of Environmental Studies* (<https://doi.org/10.1080/00207233.2018.1494927>).
- Kassam, A., Friedrich, T., Derpsch, R. and Kienzle J. (2015) 'Overview of the worldwide spread of conservation agriculture'. *Field Actions Science Reports* Vol. 8, <http://factsreports.revues.org/3966>.
- Kassam, A.H. and Kowal, J. (1973) 'Crop productivity in savanna and rain forest zones in Nigeria'. *Savanna* 3: 39–49.
- Kassam, A., Mkomwa, S. and Friedrich, T. (eds) (2017) *Conservation Agriculture for Africa: Building Resilient Farming Systems in a Changing Climate*. CABI.
- Kassam, A.H., Stoop, W. and Uphoff, N. (2011) 'Review of SRI modifications in rice crop and water management and research issues for making further improvements in agricultural and water productivity'. *Paddy and Water Environment* 9: 163–180.
- Lahmar, R., Bationo, A., Dan Lamso, N., Guéro, Y. and Tittonel, P. (2012) 'Tailoring conservation agriculture technologies to West Africa semi-arid zones: Building on traditional local practices for soil restoration'. *Field Crops Research* 132: 158–167.
- Landers, J. (2007) 'Tropical crop-livestock systems in conservation agriculture: The Brazilian experience'. *Integrated Crop Management* Vol. 5. FAO.
- Marongwe, S.L., Kwazira, K., Jenrich, M., Thierfelder, T., Kassam, A. and Friedrich T. (2011) 'An African success: The case of Conservation Agriculture in Zimbabwe'. *International Journal of Agricultural Sustainability* 9(1): 153–161.
- McIntyre, B.D., Herren, H.R., Wakhungu, J. and Watson, R.T. (eds) (2009) Sub-Saharan Africa (SSA) Report. *International Assessment of Agricultural Knowledge, Science and Technology for Development (IAASTD)*. Island Press.
- Montpellier Panel. (2014) 'No ordinary matter: Conserving, restoring and enhancing Africa's soils'. *Report from the Montpellier Panel, at the International Fund for Agricultural Development, Rome, 5 December 2014*. www.ag4impact.org/news/no-ordinary-matter-conserving-restoring-and-enhancing-africas-soils-2014.
- Norman, D. (2002) 'The farming systems approach: A historical perspective'. *Seventeenth Symposium of the International Farming Systems Association, Lake Buena Vista, Florida, 17–20 November 2002*.
- Norman, D., Beeden, P., Kroeker, W.J. Pryor, D.H. Hays, H.M. and Huizinga, B. (1975) 'The feasibility of improved sole crop maize production technology for the small-scale farmer in the Northern Guinea Savanna Zone of Nigeria'. *Samaru Miscellaneous Paper* No. 59. Ahmadu Bello University.
- Owenya, M.Z., Mariki, W.L., Kienzle, J., Freidrich, T. and Kassam, A. (2011) 'Conservation Agriculture (CA) in Tanzania: The case of the Mwangaza B CA farmer field school (FFS) Rhotia Village, Karatu District, Arusha'. *International Journal of Agricultural Sustainability* 9(1): 145–152.
- Phillips, T.P., Taylor, D.S., Sanni, L. and Akoroda, M.O. (2004) *A Cassava Industrial Revolution in Nigeria: The Potential for a New Industrial Crop*. IFAD and FAO.
- Schoneveld, G.C. (2011) *The Anatomy of Large-Scale Farmland Acquisitions in sub-Saharan Africa*. Working Paper 85, CIFOR.

- SCISA (2015) Website. www.iwmi.cgiar.org/Publications/CABI_Publications/CA_CABI_Series/Water_Productivity/Unprotected/0851996698ch15.pdf.
- Settle, W., Soumaré, M., Sarr, M., Hama Garba, M. and Poisot, A.-S. (2013) 'Reducing pesticide risks to farming communities: Adaptive management through Farmer Field Schools in the Senegal and Niger River basins in west Africa'. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B* 369(1639): 20120277. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1098/rstb.2012.0277>.
- Sims, B.G., Thierfelder, C., Kienzle, J., Friedrich, T. and Kassam, A.H. (2012) 'Development of the conservation agriculture equipment industry in sub-Saharan Africa'. *Applied Engineering in Agriculture* 28(6): 1–11.
- Thierfelder, C., Chisu, J.L., Gama, M., Cheesman, S., Jere, Z.D., Bunderson, W.T., Eash, N.S. and Rusinamhodzi, L. (2013) 'Maize-based conservation agriculture systems in Malawi: Long-term trends in productivity'. *Field Crops Research* 142: 47–57.
- Thornton, P.K., Kruska, R.L., Henninger, N., Kristjanson, P.M., Reid, R.S., Atiena, F., Odero, A.N. and Ndegwa, T. (2002) *Mapping Poverty and Livestock in the Developing World*. ILRI.
- Tiffen, M. (2004) 'Population pressure, migration and urbanization: Impacts on crop-livestock systems development in West Africa'. In Williams, T.O., Tarawali, S.A., Hiernaux, P. and Fernández-Rivera, S. (eds) *Sustainable Crop-Livestock Production for Improved Livelihoods and Natural Resource Management in West Africa. Proceedings of the International Conference held at IITA*. Ibadan, Nigeria, 19–22 November 2001. ILRI and CTA.
- Truman, P.P., Taylor, D.S., Sanni, L. and Akoroda, M.O. (2004) *A Cassava Industrial Revolution in Nigeria The Global Cassava Development Strategy*. IFAD-FAO.
- Uphoff, N., Kassam, A.H. and Harwood, R. (2011) 'SRI as a methodology for raising crop and water productivity: productive adaptations in rice agronomy and irrigation water management'. *Paddy and Water Environment* 9: 3–11.
- Van Wesenbeeck, C.F.A. and Merbis, M.D. (2012) *Africa in Maps. Data Repository of the Food Economy in Sub-Saharan Africa*. Centre for World Food Studies.
- Wiredu, A.N., Gyasi, K.O., Abdoulaye, T., Sanogo, D. and Langyintuo, A. (2010) *Characterization of Maize Producing Household in the Northern Region of Ghana*. Country Report: Ghana. CSRI/SARI-IITA.
- World Bank. (2009) *Awakening Africa's Sleeping Giant: Prospects for Commercial Agriculture in the Guinea Savannah Zone and Beyond*. World Bank.
- World Bank. (2012) *Conservation Agriculture: How Has Zambia Scaled It up from the World*. Bank Institute, in collaboration with TerrAfrica programme and partners. www.youtube.com/watch?v=ZWTnH1cHWWw.
- Abera, D. 2010. *Accelerated Growth in Ethiopian Agriculture*. Ministry of Agriculture and Rural Development. Addis Ababa, Ethiopia.
- Ali, S.N. 2007. *Climate Change and Economic Growth in a Rain-Fed Economy: How Much Does Rainfall Variability Cost Ethiopia?* Ethiopian Economic Association. Ethiopian Economic Association Working paper series, Addis Ababa, Ethiopia.
- Amede, T. (ed.) 2003. Natural resource degradation and environmental concerns in the Amhara National Regional State: Impact of food security. Proceedings of the Natural Resource Management Conference, Bahir Dar, Ethiopia, 24–26 July 2002. Ethiopian Soil Science Society, pp. 185–207.
- Amede, T. 2014. Technical and institutional attributes constraining the performance of small-scale irrigation in Ethiopia. *Water Resources and Rural Development* 6: 78–91.
- Amede, T., Tarawali, S. and Peden D. (eds). 2011. Improving water productivity in crop livestock systems in drought prone regions. Special Issue, *Experimental Agriculture* 47(1). Cambridge University Press.
- Argaw, A. 2012. Highlands vulnerability to climate borne diseases. *A Paper Presented at the National Workshop on Climate Resilient Highland Transformation*, Tigray National Regional State Science and Technology Agency, 21–23 June, Mekelle, Ethiopia.

- Barry, L., Olson, J. and Campell, D. 2003. *Assessing the Cost and Impact of Land Degradation at the National Level: Overview, Findings and Lessons Learned*. www.global-mechanism.org/dynamic/documents/document_file/cost-of-land-degradation-case-studies.pdf.
- Bureau of Statistics. 2013. *Lesotho Livestock Products*. Statistical Report No. 13. Kingdom of Lesotho.
- Chamberlin, J. and Schmidt, E. 2011. *Ethiopian Agriculture: A Dynamic Geography Perspective*. Ethiopia strategy support programme II. ESSPII, Working paper No. 017, March 2011. IFPRI.
- CSA (Central Statistical Agency). 2010. *Report on Area and Production of Crops: Agricultural Sample Survey, Volume IV*. Statistical Bulletin 446, Addis Ababa, Ethiopia.
- Degrande, A., Schreckenber, K., Mbosso, C. and Mfoumou, C. 2007. *Farmer Livelihoods in the Humid Forest and Moist Savannah Zones of Cameroon*. Working Paper nr 47 . Yaoundé, ICRAF-WCA/HT.
- Deininger, K. and Byerlee, D. 2011. *Rising Global Interest in Farmland. Can It Yield Sustainable and Equitable Benefits*. The World Bank.
- Dixie, G. and Jayaraman, N. 2011. *Strengthening Agricultural Marketing with ICT*. World Bank. www.ictinagriculture.org/sites/ictinagriculture.org/files/final_Module9.pdf.
- Dixon, J., Gulliver, A. and Gibbon, D. 2001. *Farming Systems and Poverty: Improving Farmers' Livelihoods in a Changing World*. FAO and World Bank.
- Ehui, S. and Jabbar, M. 2002. *Measuring Productivity in African Agriculture: A Survey of Applications of the Superlative Index Numbers Approach*. Socio-economics and policy research working paper 38. International Livestock Research Institute (ILRI).
- Ethiopian Economic Association. 2000. *Annual Report on the Ethiopian Economy Vol. I, 1999–2000*. www.eaecon.org/node/5500.
- FAO. 2005. *Livestock Sector Brief, Lesotho*. FAO and livestock information sector analysis and policy branch, AGAL. March 2005, Rome.
- FAO. 2014. Website. www.fao.org/docrep/004/ab582e/AB582E03.htm.
- FAOSTAT (undated) FAO database, FAO, Rome. www.fao.org/faostat/en/#data.
- GCCA (Global Climate Change Alliance). 2014. Website. www.gcca.eu/national-programmes/africa/gcca-lesotho.
- Gockowski, J., Tonyé, J., Diaw, C., Hauser, S., Kotto-Same, J. and Njomgang, R. 2005. The forest margins of Cameroon. In Palm, C., Vosti, S., Sanchez, P. and Ericksen, P. (eds) *Slash-and-Burn Agriculture: The Search for Alternatives*. Colombia University, pp. 305–331.
- Grow Africa. 2014. *Agricultural Partnerships Take Root Across Africa. Second Annual Report on Private Sector Investment in Support of Country-Led Transformations in African Agriculture*. www3.weforum.org/docs/IP/2014/GA/WEF_GrowAfrica_AnnualReport2014.pdf.
- Hailelassie, A., Peden, D., Gebreselassie, S., Amede, T. and Descheemaeker, K. 2009. Livestock water productivity in mixed crop-livestock farming systems of the Blue Nile Basin: Assessing variability and prospects for improvement. *Agricultural Systems* 102(1–3): 33–40.
- Hazell, P. and Wood, S. 2008. Drivers of change in the global agriculture. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society* 363: 495–515.
- Herrero, M. and Thornton, P.K. 2011. *Production Systems for the Future: Balancing Trade-Offs between Food Production, Efficiency, Livelihoods and the Environment*. A key note paper. http://aciar.gov.au/files/node/13987/keynote_3_19864.pdf.
- Holden, S.T., Deininger, K. and Gebru, H. 2011. Tenure insecurity, gender, low-cost land certification and land rental market participation in Ethiopia. *Journal of Development Studies* 47(1): 31–47.
- ICIMOD. 2011. *Value Chains for Mountain Products and Services*. Information sheet No. 3/11. International Centre for Integrated Mountain Development. Kathmandu, Nepal.
- IFDC. 2016. Fertilizer Statistics Overview: Ethiopia, 2012–2015. africafertilizer.org/wp-content/uploads/2017/05/Ethiopia-Fertilizer-Statistics-Overview-2015.pdf.
- IGAD. 2010. *The Contribution of Livestock to the Economies of IGAD Member States*. IGAD LPI working paper No 02–10.
- ITACADDIS (Italian Development Cooperation). 2014. Website. <http://www.itacaddis.org/italy/index.cfm?>

- Jayne, T.S., Chamberlin, J. and Headey, D. 2014. Land pressures, the evolution of farming systems, and development strategies in Africa: A synthesis. *Food Policy* 48: 1–17.
- Joint Science Academies Statement. 2006. *Science and Technology for Development in Africa*. www.interacademies.net/File.aspx?id=6431.
- Kelemu, S., Mahuku, G., Fregene, M., Pachico, D., Johnson, N., Calvert, L., Rao, I., Buruchara, R., Amede, T., Kimani, P., Kirkby, R., Kaaria, S. and Ampofo, K. 2003. Harmonizing the agricultural biotechnology debate for the benefits of African farmers. *African Journal Biotechnology* 2(11): 394–416. Special Anniversary Review.
- Mekonnen, S., Descheemaeker, K., Tolera, A. and Amede, T. 2011. Livestock water productivity in a water stressed environment in Northern Ethiopia. *Experimental Agriculture* 47(1): 85–98.
- Negassa, A., Rashi, S. and Gebremedhin, B. 2011. *Livestock Production and Marketing*. IFPRI ESSPII Working paper 26. Addis Ababa, Ethiopia.
- NEPAD. 2009. *How are Countries Measuring up to the Maputo Declaration?* Policy brief, June 2009. www.nepad-caadp.net/pdf/How%20are%20countries%20measuring%20up%20to%20the%20Maputo%20declaration.pdf.
- New Agriculturist*. 2001. Cameroon, Country profile. www.new-ag.info/en/country/profile.php?a=871.
- Nomathemba, M. 2010. *Private Sector Agribusiness Investment in Sub-Saharan Africa. Agricultural Management, Marketing and Finance*. Working Document 27. FAO.
- Oxfam UK. 2011. Engaging smallholders in value chains. *Program Insight*.
- Shiferaw, A., Soderbom, M., Siba, E. and Alemu, G. 2012. *Road Networks and Enterprise Performance in Ethiopia. Evidence from the Road Sector Development Programme*. International Growth Centre (IGC), Working paper 12/0696. www.theigc.org/sites/default/files/Road%20networks%20and%20firm%20performance_Adamasu%20Shiferaw%20et%20al_2012.pdf
- Shiferaw, B., Jaleta, M., Kassie, M. and Yirga, C. 2013. Adoption and impact of improved maize and wheat varieties in Ethiopia: Empirical evidence. *Invited paper presented at the Third Dialogue on Ethiopian Agriculture*, 4–5 July 2013, Haramaya University, Ethiopia.
- Smaling, E.M., Nandwa, S. and Jenssen, B. 1997. Soil fertility in Africa at stake. In Buresh, R., Sanchez, P. and Cahoun, F. (eds) *Replenishing Soil Fertility in Africa*. SSSA special publication number 51, pp. 47–62.
- Spielman, D., Kelemework, D. and Alemu, D. 2009. Policies to promote smallholder intensification in Ethiopia. The search for appropriate public and private roles. IFPRI (unpublished).
- Spielman, D., Kelemework, D. and Alemu, D. 2011. *Seed, Fertilizer, and Agricultural Extension in Ethiopia. Ethiopia Strategy Support Programme II (ESSP II)*. ESSP II working paper 20. International Food Policy Research Institute (IFPRI) and Ethiopian Development Research Institute (EDRI).
- Tafesse, A.S., Dorosh, P. and Asrat, S. 2012. *Crop Production in Ethiopia: Regional Patterns and Trends. Ethiopia Strategy Support Programme (ESSP-II)*. Research Note 11. IFPRI.
- The Economist*. 2014. African population: Can it survive such speedy growth? 23 August.
- The Reporter*. 2013. Roses from Ethiopia: A booming market. www.thereporterethiopia.com/index.php/living-and-the-arts/lifestyle/item/241-roses-from-ethiopia-a-booming-market.
- UNCSD (The United Nations Conference on Sustainable Development). 2012. www.unscd2012.org/content/documents/287.
- World Bank. 2006. *Agriculture Investment Sourcebook*.
- World Bank. 2012. *Agriculture Innovation Systems. An Investment Sourcebook*.
- Wubalem, T. 2012. The status of forestry development in Ethiopia: Challenges and opportunities. *A Paper Presented at National Dialog on Sustainable Agricultural Intensification in Ethiopia and its Role on the Climate Resilient Green Economy Initiative in Ethiopia*. 23–24 July 2012, ILRI Campus, Addis Ababa, Ethiopia.
- Zerbini, E., Shapiro, B. and Chirgwin, J.C. (eds). 1998. Technology transfer: Multi-purpose cows for milk, meat and traction in smallholder farming systems. *Proceedings of Expert Consultation, ILRI, Addis Ababa, Ethiopia*, 11–14 September 1995. ILRI (International Livestock Research Institute), Nairobi, Kenya.

- African Union (2014) The Maputo declaration on accelerated agricultural growth and transformation for shared prosperity and improved livelihoods. Twenty-third ordinary session of the AU assembly in Malabo, Equatorial Guinea, 26–27 June 2014, <https://au.int/en/documents/20150617-2>.
- Ahenkorah, Y., Halm, B.J., Appiah, M.R., Akrofi, G.S. and Yirenskyi, J.E.K. (1987) 'Twenty years results from a shade and fertiliser trial on Amazon cocoa (*Theobroma cacao*) in Ghana', *Experimental Agriculture*, vol. 23, pp. 31–39.
- Akiyama, T. and Trivedi, P.K. (1987) 'Vintage production approach to perennial crop supply: An application to tea in major producing countries', *Journal of Econometrics*, vol. 36, nos. 1–2, pp. 133–161.
- Asare, R. (2011) Cocoa seed multiplication: an assessment of seed gardens in Cameroon, Ghana and Nigeria. *Sustainable Tree Crops Program Working Paper No. 11*, Ibadan, Nigeria.
- Ayodele, T. (2010) 'The World Bank's palm oil mistake', *The New York Times*, 15 October 2010. Op-Ed contribution.
- Bazzi-Veil, L. and Kambou, S. (2002) *Etude communautaire sur le travail des enfants dans les plantations cacaoyères en Côte d'Ivoire*. Centre d'Etudes Prospectives et Appliquées sur les Politiques Sociales et les Systèmes de Sécurité Sociale (CEPRASS), IITA, ILO-IPEC, Abidjan/Ibadan www.iita.org/c/document_library/get_file?p_l_id=98899&folderId=104025&name=DLFE-1147.pdf.
- Benjamin, D. and Deaton, A. (1993) 'Household welfare and the pricing of coffee and cocoa in Côte d'Ivoire: Lessons from the Living Standards Survey', *World Bank Economic Review*, vol. 7, no. 3, pp. 293–318.
- Berry, S. (1988) 'Property rights and rural resource management: The case of tree crops in West Africa', *Cahiers des Sciences Humaines*, vol. 24, no. 1, pp. 3–18.
- Blocher, J. (2006) 'Building on custom: Land tenure policy and economic development in Ghana', *Yale Human Rights & Development Law Journal*, vol. 9, pp. 166–202.
- Boserup, E. (2007) *Woman's Role in Economic Development*. Earthscan.
- Cheyns, E. and Rafflegeau, S. (2005) 'Family agriculture and the sustainable development issue: possible approaches from the African oil palm sector. The example of Ivory Coast and Cameroon', *Oléagineux, Corps Gras, Lipides*, vol. 12, no. 2, pp. 111–120.
- Conley, T.G. and Udry, C.R. (2010) 'Learning about a new technology: Pineapple in Ghana', *American Economic Review*, vol. 100, no. 1, pp. 35–69.
- Cotula, L., Vermeulen, S., Leonard, R. and Keeley, J. (2009) *Land Grab or Development Opportunity? Agricultural Investment and International Land Deals in Africa*. IIED/FAO/IFAD.
- David, S. Agordorku, S. Bassanaga, S., Couloud, J.-I., Kumi, M.A., Okuku, I. and Wandji, D. (2006) A guide for conducting farmer field schools on cocoa integrated crop and pest management. International Institute of Tropical Agriculture. Accra, Ghana, www.share4dev.info/ffsnet/documents/3184.pdf.
- Deaton, A. (1999) 'Commodity prices and growth in Africa', *Journal of Economic Perspectives*, vol. 13, no. 3, pp. 23–40.
- Edwin, J. and Masters, W.A. (2005) 'Genetic improvement and cocoa yields in Ghana', *Experimental Agriculture*, vol. 41, pp. 491–503.
- FAOSTAT (2015) FAO database, FAO, Rome. www.fao.org/faostat/en/#data.
- Gerasimchuk, I. and Koh, P.Y. (2013) *The EU Biofuel Policy and Palm Oil: Cutting Subsidies or Cutting Rainforest?* International Institute of Sustainable Development.
- Ghana Statistical Service (2009) *Ghana Demographic and Health Survey 2008*.
- Gilbert, C.L. and Varangis, P. (2003) 'Globalization and international commodity trade with specific reference to the West African cocoa producers', in R.E. Baldwin and L.A. Winters (eds) *Challenges to Globalization: Analyzing the Economics*. University of Chicago Press.
- Gockowski, J. (2012) *Policy Led Intensification and Returns to Input Use in Ghana*. International Institute of Tropical Agriculture, Accra, Ghana.
- Gockowski, J., Afari-Sefa, V., Sarpong, D.B., Osei-Asare, Y. and Agyeman, N.F. (2013) 'Improving the productivity and income of Ghanaian cocoa farmers while maintaining environmental services: What role for certification?' *International Journal of Agricultural Sustainability*, vol. 11, no. 4, pp. 331–346.

- Gockowski, J., Robiglio, V., Muilerman, S. and Agyeman, N.F. (2011) *Agricultural Intensification as a Strategy for Climate Mitigation in Ghana*. CGIAR Research Program on Climate Change, Agriculture and Food Security (CCAFS).
- Gockowski, J. and Sonwa, D. (2011) 'Cocoa intensification scenarios and their predicted impact on CO₂ emissions, biodiversity conservation, and rural livelihoods in the Guinea rain forest of West Africa', *Environmental Management*, vol. 48, no. 2, pp. 307–321.
- Gockowski, J., Tchata, M., Dondjang, J., Hietet, G. and Fouda, T. (2010). 'An empirical analysis of the biodiversity and economic returns to cocoa agroforests in southern Cameroon', *Journal of Sustainable Forestry*, vol. 29, nos. 6–7, pp. 638–670.
- Gockowski, J., Tonye, J., Diaw, C., Hauser, S., Kotto-Same, J., Moukam, A., Nomgang, R., Nwaga, D., Tiki-Manga, T., Tondoh, J., Tchoundjeu, Z., Weise, S. and Zapfack, L. (2005) 'The forest margins of Cameroon', in C.A. Palm, S.A. Vosti, P.A. Sanchez and P. Ericksen (eds) *Slash and Burn: The Search for Alternatives*. Columbia University Press.
- Gockowski, J., Yapo, R., Okafor, C., Mva, J. and Gyamfi, I. (2008) Institutional innovation in the credit, input and cocoa markets of west Africa. *STCP Working Paper*, no 8, International Institute of Tropical Agriculture.
- Guyer, J. (1984) 'Family and Farm in Southern Cameroon', *African Research Studies* No. 15, African Studies Center, Boston University.
- Hansen, M., Potapov, P., Moore, R., Hancher, M., Turubanova, S., Tyukavina, A., Thau, D., Stehman, S., Goetz, S., Loveland, J., Kommareddy, A., Egorov, A., Chini, L., Justice, C. and Townshend, J. (2013) 'High-resolution global maps of 21st-century forest cover change', *Science*, vol. 342, no. 6160, pp. 850–853.
- Hayami, Y. and Ruttan, V. (1985) *Agricultural Development: An International Perspective*. The Johns Hopkins Press, second edition.
- Hicks, J. R. (1932) *The Theory of Wages*. Macmillan.
- Hill, P. (1963) *The Migrant Cocoa Farmers of Southern Ghana: A Study in Rural Capitalism*. Cambridge University Press.
- ICCO. (2015) *Quarterly Bulletin of Cocoa Statistics*, Vol. 41, No. 4, Cocoa Year 2014/15.
- IITA. (2002) *Sustainable Tree Crop Program Baseline Survey Data for the Cocoa Subsectors of Côte d'Ivoire, Ghana, Nigeria and Cameroon*. International Institute of Tropical Agriculture, Ibadan, Nigeria.
- IITA. (2011) *Sustainable Tree Crop Program Survey Data for the Smallholder Intensified Farming Subsystem in Bia District Ghana*. International Institute of Tropical Agriculture, Ibadan, Nigeria.
- IMF. (2015) *International Monetary Fund Primary Commodity Prices*, www.imf.org/external/np/res/commod/index.aspx.
- Jagoret, P., Michel-Dounias, I. and Malézieux, E. (2011) 'Long-term dynamics of cocoa agroforests: a case study in central Cameroon', *Agroforestry Systems*, vol. 81, no. 3, pp. 267–278.
- Jagoret, P., Michel-Dounias, I., Snoeck, D., Ngnogué, H.T. and Malézieux, E. (2012) 'Afforestation of savannah with cocoa agroforestry systems: a small-farmer innovation in central Cameroon', *Agroforestry Systems*, vol. 86, no. 3, pp. 493–504.
- Kolavalli, S. and Vigneri, M. (2011) 'Cocoa in Ghana: shaping the success of an economy', in P. Chuhan-Pole and M. Angwafo (eds) *Yes Africa Can: Success Stories from a Dynamic Continent*. World Bank.
- Mayaux, P., Pekel, J.-F., Desclée, B., Donnay, F., Lupi, A., Achard, F., Clerici, M., Bodart, C., Brink, A., Nasi, R. and Belward, A. (2013) 'State and evolution of the African rainforests between 1990 and 2010', *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B*; DOI: 10.1098/rstb.2012.0300.
- Norris, K., Asase, A., Collen, B., Gockowski, J., Mason, J., Phalan, B. and Wade, A. (2010) 'Biodiversity in a forest-agricultural mosaic – the changing face of West African rainforests', *Biological Conservation*, vol. 143, pp. 2341–2350.
- Ntsiful, A.K. (2010) Outgrower oil palm plantations scheme by private companies and poverty reduction in Ghana. PhD thesis, St. Clements University, Turks and Caicos Islands.

- Phalan, B., Onial, M., Balmford, A. and Green, R.E. (2011) 'Reconciling food production and biodiversity conservation: land sharing and land sparing compared', *Science*, vol. 333, no. 6047, pp. 1289–1291.
- Ruf, F. (1995) *Booms et Crises du Cacao: Les Vertiges de l'Or Brun*. CIRAD-SAR Ministère de la coopération.
- Ruf, F. (2008) *Developing Smallholder Rubber Production: Lessons from AFD's Experience*. Ivory Coast report, Agence Française de Développement.
- Ruttan, V. and Thirtle, C. (1989) 'Induced technological change in African agriculture', *Journal of International Development*, vol. 1 no. 1, pp. 1–45.
- Sanchez, P.A., Sheperd, K., Soule, M., Place, F., Buresh, R., Izac, A.-M., Mkwunye, U., Kwesiga, F., Ndiritu, C. and Wooster P. (1997) 'Soil fertility replenishment in Africa: An investment in natural resource capital', in R. Buresh, P. Sanchez and F. Calhoun (eds) *Replenishing Soil Fertility in Africa*. SSSA special publication number 51. Soil Science Society of America.
- Sheil, D., Casson, A., Meijaard, E., van Noordwijk, M., Gaskell, J., Sunderland-Groves, J., Wertz, K. and Kanninen, M. (2009) The impacts and opportunities of oil palm in Southeast Asia: What do we know and what do we need to know? Occasional paper no. 51. CIFOR, Bogor, Indonesia.
- Simpson, D.H. (1937) *Gold Coast Men of Affairs*. Colonial History Series, Dawsons of Pall Mall, London.
- Stoorvogel, J.J. and Smaling, E.M.A. (1990) *Assessment of Soil Nutrient Depletion in Sub-Saharan Africa: 1983–2000*. Winand Staring Centre, Wageningen.
- USDA (2013) Oilseeds: World markets and trade. <https://downloads.usda.library.cornell.edu/usda-esmis/files/tx31qh68h/d791sg56p/2801pg691/oilseed-trade-12-10-2014.pdf>
- Vermeulen, S. and Goad, N. (2006) *Towards Better Practice in Smallholder Palm Oil Production*. Natural Resource Issues Series No 5, International Institute for Environment and Development.
- World Growth (2011) *The Economic Benefit of Palm Oil to Indonesia*. Palm Oil Green Development Campaign report. http://worldgrowth.org/site/wp-content/uploads/2012/06/WG_Indonesian_Palm_Oil_Benefits_Report-2_11.pdf.
- Aklilu, Y. and Catley, A., 2010. Livestock exports from Pastoral Areas: an analysis of benefits by wealth group and policy implications. *IGAD LPI Working Paper No. 01–10*.
- Ayantunde, A.A., Asse, R., Fall, A. and Said, M.Y., 2010. *Transhumance and endemic ruminant livestock in sub-humid zone of West Africa: contexts, concepts and challenges*. A synthesis report for the Global Environmental Facility (GEF) – Africa Development Bank (AfDB) project "Sustainable management of globally significant endemic ruminant livestock of West Africa". International Livestock Research Institute (ILRI).
- Ayantunde, A.A., de Leeuw, J., Turner, M.D and Said, M., 2011. Challenges of assessing the sustainability of (agro) pastoral systems. *Livestock Science*, 139: 30–43.
- Barrett, C.B., 2005. Rural poverty dynamics: development policy implications. *Agricultural Economics*, 32: 45–60.
- Behnke, R., 2010. The contribution of livestock to the economies of IGAD member states: study findings. Application of the Methodology in Ethiopia and Recommendations for Further Work: IGAD (Inter-Governmental Authority on Development) Livestock Policy Initiative Working Paper No 02–10.
- Behnke, R.H., Scoones, I. and Kerven, C., 1993. *Range Ecology at Disequilibrium, New Models of Natural Variability and Pastoral Adaptation in African Savannas*. Overseas Development Institute, London.
- Bekure, S., de Leeuw, P.N., Grandin, B.E. and Neate, P.J.H. (eds), 1991. *Maasai Herding: An Analysis of the Livestock Production System of Maasai Pastoralists in Eastern Kajiado District, Kenya*. ILCA Systems Study 4. ILCA (International Livestock Centre for Africa).
- Blench, R., 1999. Why are there so many pastoral groups in Eastern Africa? In Azarya, V. (ed.) *Pastoralists Under Pressure? Fulbe Societies Confronting Change in West Africa*. Brill.
- Bouwman, A.F., Van der Hoek, K.W., Eickhout, B. and Soenario, I., 2005. Exploring changes in world ruminant production systems. *Agricultural Systems*, 84: 121–153.

- Breman, H. and De Wit, C.T., 1983. Rangeland productivity and exploitation in the Sahel. *Science*, 221: 1341–1347.
- Butcher, C., 1994. *Nomadic Pastoralism and Extension: A Review of the Literature*. Pastoral Development Network Paper 37d. www.odi.org.uk/odi.org.uk/files/odi-assets/publications-opinion-files/5407.pdf.
- Carr-Hill, R., 2005. *The Education of Nomadic Peoples in East Africa: Djibouti, Eritrea, Ethiopia, Kenya, Tanzania and Uganda*. Synthesis Report. International Institute for Educational Planning, UNESCO IIEP.
- Chantararat, S., Mude, A.G., Barrett, C.B. and Carter, M.R., 2012. Designing index-based live-stock insurance for managing asset risk in northern Kenya. *Journal of Risk and Insurance*, 80: 205–237.
- Coppock, D.L., Desta, S., Tezera, S. and Gebru, G., 2011. Capacity building helps pastoral women transform impoverished communities in Ethiopia. *Science*, 334: 1394–1398.
- De Leeuw, J., Prins, H.H.T., Njuguna, E.C., Said, M.Y. and De By, R.A., 1998. *Interpretation of DRSRS Animal Counts (1977–1997) in the Rangeland Districts of Kenya*. ITC.
- De Leeuw, P.N., 1991. The study area: biophysical environment. In Bekure, S., De Leeuw, P.N., Grandin, B.E. and Neate, P.J.H. (eds) *Maasai Herding: An Analysis of the Livestock Production Systems of Maasai Pastoralists in Eastern Kajiado District, Kenya*. ILCA Systems Study 4, ILCA.
- De Leeuw, P.N. and Tothill, J., 1990. *The Concept of Rangeland Carrying Capacity in Sub-Saharan Africa: Myth or Reality*. ODI.
- Devereux, S., 2009. Why does famine persist in Africa? *Food Security*, 1: 25–35.
- Dixon, J., Gulliver, A. and Gibbon, D., 2001. *Global Farming Systems Study: Challenges and Priorities to 2030 – Synthesis and Global Overview*. FAO.
- Eriksen, P.E., de Leeuw, J., Thornton, P.K., Said, M.Y., Herrero, M. and Notenbaert, A., 2012. Climate change in Sub-Saharan Africa: what consequences for pastoralism? In Catley, A., Lind, J. and Scoones, I. (eds) *Pastoralism and Development in Africa: Dynamic Change at the Margins*, Routledge, pp. 71–81.
- FAO, 2001. *Pastoralism in the New Millennium*. FAO Animal Production and Health Paper 150.
- FAO, 2013. *Children's Work in the Livestock Sector: Herding and Beyond*. Economic and Social Development Department, FAO.
- FAOSTAT (undated) FAOSTAT database, FAO, Rome. www.fao.org/faostat/en/#data.
- Fratkin, E. and Smith, K., 1995. Women's changing economic roles with pastoral sedentarization: varying strategies in alternate Rendille communities. *Human Ecology*, 23: 433–454.
- Galvin, K.A., 2009. Transitions: Pastoralists living with change. *Annual Review of Anthropology*, 38: 185–198.
- Headey, D., 2011. *Deja vu in the Horn of Africa. 2011 Global Food Policy Report*. IFPRI, pp. 25–38.
- Hesse, C. and Cavanna, S., 2010. *Modern and Mobile: The Future of Livestock Production in Africa's Drylands*. IIED and SOS Sahel International UK.
- Homewood, K., 2004. Policy, environment and development in African rangelands. *Environmental Science and Policy*, 7: 125–143.
- Homewood, K., 2008. *Ecology of African Pastoralist Societies*. James Currey Ltd.
- Homewood, K., Kristjanson, P. and Trench, P., 2009. Staying Maasai? Pastoral livelihoods, diversification and the role of wildlife in development. In Galvin, K., Reid, R., Behnke, R. and Hobbs, N.T. (eds) *Fragmentation in Semi-Arid and Arid Landscapes: Consequences for Human and Natural Systems*. Springer, pp. 369–408.
- Lengoiboni, M., Bregt, A.K. and Van der Molen, P., 2010. Pastoralism within land administration in Kenya: the missing link. *Land Use Policy*, 27: 579–588.
- Lesnoff, M., Cormiaux, C. and Hiernaux, P., 2012. Sensitivity analysis of the recovery dynamics of cattle population following drought in the Sahel region. *Ecological Modelling*, 232: 28–39.
- Lesorogol, C.K., 2003. Transforming institutions among pastoralists: inequality and land privatization. *American Anthropologist*, 105: 531–541.
- Little, P.D., McPeak, J., Barrett, C.B. and Kristjanson, P., 2008. Challenging orthodoxies: understanding poverty in pastoral areas of east Africa. *Development and Change*, 39: 587–611.

- Lybbert, T.J., Barrett, C.B., Desta, S. and Layne Coppock, D., 2004. Stochastic wealth dynamics and risk management among a poor population. *The Economic Journal*, 114: 750–777.
- McPeak, J.G. and Barrett, C.B., 2001. Differential risk exposure and stochastic poverty traps among east African pastoralists. *American Journal of Agricultural Economics*, 83: 674–679.
- Moritz, M., Kyle, B.R., Nolan, K.C., Patrick, S., Shaffer, M.F. and Thampy, G., 2009. Too many people and too few livestock in west Africa? An evaluation of Sandford's thesis. *Journal of Development Studies*, 45: 1113–1133.
- Mwangi, E. and Ostrom, E., 2009. Top-down solutions: looking up from east Africa's rangelands. *Environment*, 51: 34–45.
- Nguyen, G.T., 1998. *Food Insecurity and the Evolution of Indigenous Risk-Sharing Institutions in the Sahel*. Ohio State University.
- Niamir-Fuller, M., 1999. Managing Mobility in African Rangelands. In McCarthy, N., Swallow, B., Kirk, M. and Hazell, P. (eds) *Property Rights, Risks and Livestock Development in Africa*. IFPRI, pp. 102–131.
- Nkedianye, D., de Leeuw, J., Ogutu, J.O., Said, M.Y., Saidimu, T., Kifugo, S., et al., 2011. Mobility and livestock mortality in communally used pastoral areas: the impact of the 2005–2006 drought on livestock mortality in Maasailand. *Pastoralism: Research, Policy and Practice*, 1(1): 1–17.
- Norton-Griffiths, M. and Said, M.Y., 2010. The future of wildlife on Kenya's rangelands: an economic perspective. In du Toit, J.T., Kock, R. and Deutsch, J.C. (eds) *Wild Rangelands: Conserving Wildlife While Maintaining Livestock in Semi-Arid Ecosystems*. Blackwell, pp. 367–392.
- Okwi, P.O., Ndeng'e, G., Kristjanson, P., Arunga, M., Notenbaert, A., Omolo, A., Henninger, N., Benson, T., Kariuki, P. and Owuor, J., 2007. Spatial determinants of poverty in rural Kenya. *PNAS*, 104: 16769–16774.
- Osano, P., 2013. Payments to promote biodiversity conservation and the implication for poverty reduction among pastoral communities in east African arid and semi-arid lands. PhD Thesis, Department of Geography, McGill University.
- Osano, P., Said, M., De Leeuw, J., Moiko, S., Kaelo, D., Schomers, S., Birner, R. and Ogutu, J.O., 2013. Pastoralism and ecosystem-based adaptation in Kenyan Maasailand. *International Journal of Climate Change Strategies and Management*, 5(2): 198–214.
- Perry, B. and Grace, D., 2009. The impacts of livestock diseases and their control on growth and development processes that are pro-poor. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences*, 364(1530): 2643–2655.
- Pike, I.L., 2004. The biophysical consequences of life on the run: a case study from Turkana district, Kenya. *Human Organization*, 63: 221–235.
- Pretty, J. and Ward, H., 2001. Social capital and the environment. *World Development*, 29(2): 209–227.
- Prothero, R.M., 1994. Forced movements of population and health hazards in tropical Africa. *International Journal of Epidemiology*, 23(4): 657–664.
- REGLAP, 2012. *Good Practice Principles on Community Development for Use in Disaster Risk Reduction in the Drylands of the Horn of Africa*. REGLAP, Nairobi.
- Ruppert, J.C., Holm, A., Miede, S., Muldavin, E., Snyman, H.A., Wesche, K., et al., 2012. Meta-analysis of ANPP and rain-use efficiency confirms indicative value for degradation and supports non-linear response along precipitation gradients in drylands. *Journal of Vegetation Science*, <http://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/10.1111/j.1654-1103.2012.01420.x/pdf>.
- Sadler, K., Kerven, C., Calo, M., Manske, M. and Catley, A., 2009. *Milk Matters: A Literature Review of Pastoralist Nutrition and Programming Responses*. Feinstein International Center.
- Sheik-Mohamed, A. and Velema, J.P., 1999. Where health care has no access: the nomadic populations of sub-Saharan Africa. *Tropical Medicine & International Health*, 4(10): 695–707.
- Slegers, M.F.W. and Stroosnijder, L., 2008. Beyond the desertification narrative: a framework for agricultural drought in semi-arid east Africa. *AMBIO – A Journal of the Human Environment*, 37: 372–380.

- Sperling, L. and Galaty, J.G., 1990. Cattle, culture and economy: dynamics in east African pastoralism. In Johnson, L.D. and Galaty, J.G. (eds) *The World of Pastoralism: Herding Systems in Comparative Perspective*. Belhaven Press, pp. 69–98.
- Swift, J., 1988. *Major Issues in Pastoral Development with Special Emphasis on Selected African Countries*. FAO, Rome.
- Toure, I., Ickowicz, A., Wane, A., Garba, I. and Gerber, P. (eds), 2012. *Atlas des évolutions des systèmes pastoraux au Sahel*. FAO and CIRAD.
- Turner, M.D., Ayantunde, A.A., Patterson, K.P. and Patterson, E.D., 2011. Changing access to resources, social identity, and farmer-herder conflict in Sahelian west Africa. *Journal of Developments Studies*, 47(2):183–206.
- Vrieling, A., de Leeuw, J. and Said, M.Y., 2013. Length of growing period over Africa: variability and trends from 30 years of NDVI time series. *Remote Sensing*, 5: 982–1000.
- Watkins, K. and Alemayehu, W., 2012. *Financing for a Fairer, More Prosperous Kenya: A Review of the Public Spending Challenges and Options for Selected Arid and Semi-Arid Countries*. Brookings Institution.
- Zwaagstra, L., Sharif, Z., Wambile, A., de Leeuw, J., Said, M.Y., Johnson, N., Njuki, J., Ericksen, P. and Herrero, M., 2010. *An Assessment of the Response to the 2008–2009 Drought in Kenya*. A report to the European Union Delegation to the Republic of Kenya. ILRI.
- Abbot, J.I.O. and Homewood, K. (1999) 'A history of change: causes of miombo woodland decline in a protected area in Malawi', *Journal of Applied Ecology*, vol. 36, pp. 422–433.
- Abbott, J.G. and Campbell, L.M. (2009) 'Environmental histories and emerging fisheries management of the Upper Zambezi River Floodplain', *Conservation and Society*, vol. 7, pp. 83–99.
- Acreman, M.C., Farquharson, F.A.K., McCartney, M.P., Sullivan, C., Campbell, K., Hodgson, N., Morton, J., Smith, D., Birley, M., Lazenby, J., Wingfield, R. and Barbier, E.B. (2000) *Managed Flood Releases from Reservoirs: Issues and Guidance*. Report to DFID and the World Commission on Dams, Centre for Ecology and Hydrology, Wallingford.
- Acreman, M.C., Overton, I.C., King, J., Wood, P.J., Cowx, I.G., Dunbar, M.J., Kendy, E. and Young, W.J. (2014) 'The changing role of ecohydrological science in guiding environmental flows', *Hydrological Sciences Journal*, vol. 59, no. 3, pp. 433–450.
- Adamczewski, A., Hertzog, T., Dosso, M., Jouve, P. and Jamin, J.-Y. (2011) 'L'irrigation peut-elle se substituer aux cultures de décrue ? La dépression du lac Horo (Nord Mali)', *Cahiers Agricultures*, vol. 20, no. 1, pp. 97–104.
- Akande, G. and Diei-Ouadi, Y. (2010) *Post-Harvest Losses in Small-Scale Fisheries: Case Studies in Five Sub-Saharan African Countries*. FAO Fisheries and Aquaculture Technical Paper, No. 550, FAO.
- Akyeampong, E. (2007) 'Indigenous knowledge and maritime fishing in West Africa: the case of Ghana', *Tribes and Tribals*, vol. 1, pp. 173–182.
- Allison, E.H. (2011) *Aquaculture, Fisheries, Poverty and Food Security*. Working Paper 2011–65, The WorldFish Center, Penang.
- Andrefouet, S., Guillaume, M.M., Delval, A., Rasoamanendrika, F.M.A., Blanchot, J. and Bruggemann, J.H. (2013) 'Fifty years of changes in reef flat habitats of the Grand Récif of Toliara (SW Madagascar) and the impact of gleaning', *Coral Reefs*, vol. 32, no. 3, pp. 757–768.
- Atta-Mills, J., Alder, J. and Sumaila, U.R. (2004) 'The decline of a regional fishing nation: the case of Ghana and West Africa', *Natural Resources Forum*, vol. 28, pp. 13–21.
- Avery, S. (2013) *What Future for Lake Turkana? The Impact of Hydropower and Irrigation on the World's Largest Desert Lake*. University of Oxford African Studies Centre.
- Bakari, S.S., Aagaard, P., Vogt, R.D., Ruden, F., Johansen, I. and Vuai, S.A. (2012) 'Delineation of groundwater provenance in a coastal aquifer using statistical and isotopic methods, Southeast Tanzania', *Environmental Earth Sciences*, vol. 66, no. 3, pp. 889–902.
- Barbier, B., Ouedraogo, H., Dembélé, Y., Yacouba, H., Barry, B. and Jamin, J.Y. (2011) 'L'agriculture irriguée dans le Sahel ouest-africain', *Cahiers Agricultures*, vol. 20, no. 1, pp. 24–33.

- Beale, C.M., Rensberg, S.V., Bond, W.J., Coughenour, M., Fynn, R., Gaylard, A., Grant, R., Harris B., Jones, T., Mduma, S., Owen-Smith, N. and Sinclair, A.R. (2013) 'Ten lessons for the conservation of African savannah ecosystems', *Biological Conservation*, vol. 167, pp. 224–232.
- Béné, C. and Friend, R.M. (2011) 'Poverty in small-scale fisheries old issue, new analysis', *Progress in Development Studies*, vol. 11, no. 2, pp. 119–144.
- Béné, C., Hersoug, B. and Allison, E.H. (2010a) 'Not by rent alone: analysing the pro-poor functions of small-scale fisheries in developing countries', *Development Policy Review*, vol. 28, no. 3, pp. 325–358.
- Béné, C., Lawton, R. and Allison, E.H. (2010b) 'Trade matters in the fight against poverty: narratives, perceptions, and (lack of) evidence in the case of fish trade in Africa', *World Development*, vol. 38, no. 7, pp. 933–954.
- Béné, C., Neiland, A., Jolley, T., Ovie, S., Sule, O., Ladu, B., Mindjimba, K., Belal, E., Tiotsop, F., Baba, M. Dara, L., Zakara, A. and Quensiere, J. (2003) 'Inland fisheries, poverty, and rural livelihoods in the Lake Chad Basin', *Journal of Asian and African Studies*, vol. 38, no. 1, pp. 17–51.
- Béné, C., Steel, E., Luadia, B. K. and Gordon, A. (2009) 'Fish as the "bank in the water": evidence from chronic-poor communities in Congo', *Food Policy*, vol. 34, no. 1, pp. 108–118.
- Bennett, E. (2005) 'Gender, fisheries and development', *Marine Policy*, vol. 29, pp. 451–459.
- Brashares, J.S., Arcese, P., Sam, M.K., Coppoillo, P.B., Sinclair, A.R.E. and Balmford, A. (2004) 'Bushmeat hunting, wildlife declines, and fish supply in West Africa', *Science*, vol. 306, no. 5699, pp. 1180–1183.
- Chauveau, J.-P. and Jul-Larsen, E. (2000) 'Du paradigme halieutique à l'anthropologie des dynamiques institutionnelles', in Chauveau, J.-P., Jul-Larsen, E. and Chaboud, C. (eds) *Les pêches piroguières en Afrique de l'Ouest. Dynamiques institutionnelles: pouvoirs, mobilités, marches*. Karthala, pp. 9–85.
- Cinner, J.E., McClanahan, T.R., Daw, T.M., Graham, N.A.J., Maina, J., Wilson, S.K. and Hughes, T.P. (2009) 'Linking social and ecological systems to sustain coral reef fisheries', *Current Biology*, vol. 19, pp. 206–212.
- Cinner, J.E., McClanahan, T.R., Graham, N.A.J., Daw, T.M., Maina, J., Dtead, S.M., Wamukota, A., Brown, K. and Bodin, Ö. (2012) 'Vulnerability of coastal communities to key impacts of climate change on coral reefs fisheries', *Global Environmental Change*, vol. 22, pp. 12–20.
- Comas, J., Connor, D., Isselmou, M.E.M., Mateos, L. and Gómez-Macpherson, H. (2012) 'Why has small-scale irrigation not responded to expectations with traditional subsistence farmers along the Senegal River in Mauritania?' *Agricultural Systems*, vol. 110, pp. 152–161.
- Cormier-Salem, M.C. (ed.) (1999) *Rivières du Sud: Sociétés et mangroves ouest-africaines*. IRD Éditions.
- Crona, B. and Rosendo, S. (2011) 'Outside the law? Analyzing policy gaps in addressing fishers' migration in East Africa', *Marine Policy*, vol. 35, pp. 379–388.
- De Graaf, G.J., Grainger, R.J., Westlund, L., Willmann, R., Mills, D., Kelleher, K. and Koranteng, K. (2011) 'The status of routine fishery data collection in Southeast Asia, central America, the South Pacific, and West Africa, with special reference to small-scale fisheries', *ICES Journal of Marine Science*, vol. 68, no. 8, pp. 1743–1750.
- De Groot, R., Brander, L., Van der Ploeg, S., Costanza, R., Bernard, F., Braat, L., Christie, M., Crossman, N., Ghermandi, A., Hein, L., Hussain S., Kumar, P., McVittie, A., Portela, R., Rodriguez, L.C., Ten Brink, P. and Van Beukering, P. (2012) 'Global estimates of the value of ecosystems and their services in monetary units', *Ecosystem Services*, vol. 1, no. 1, pp. 50–61.
- Deininger, K.W. and Byerlee, D. (2011) *Rising Global Interest in Farmland: Can It Yield Sustainable and Equitable Benefits?* World Bank.
- De la Croix, K., Dao, A., Ferry, L. Landy, F. Muther, N. and Martin, D. (2014) 'Les systèmes de pêches collectives fluviales somono dans le Manden (Mali): Un révélateur territorial et social unique en sursis sur le Niger supérieur', in Ferry L. and Mietton M. (eds) *Chemins et territoires de l'eau dans les pays de la ceinture tropicale. Ressources et patrimoines, Dynamiques Environnementales*, vol. 32, pp. 125–143.

- Dickmann, M., Ficatier, M. and Schmidt, M. (2009) *Le Barrage de Manantali. Evaluation ex-post conjointe*. Rapport de synthèse Coopération financière avec l'Organisation pour la Mise en Valeur du fleuve Sénégal (OMVS), Banque allemande de développement (KfW), Banque européenne d'investissement (BEI), Agence française de développement (AFD).
- Duvail, S. and Hamerlynck, O. (2003) 'Hydraulic modelling as a tool for the joint management of a restored wetland: sharing the benefits of managed flood releases from the Diama dam reservoir', *Hydrology and Earth System Sciences*, vol. 7, no. 1, pp. 133–146.
- Duvail, S. and Hamerlynck, O. (2007) 'The Rufiji River flood: plague or blessing?' *International Journal of Biometeorology*, vol. 52, pp. 33–42.
- Duvail, S., Hamerlynck, O., Paron, P., Hervé, D., Nyingi, D.W. and Leone, M. (2017) 'The changing hydro-ecological dynamics of rivers and deltas of the Western Indian Ocean: Anthropogenic and environmental drivers, local adaptation and policy response'. *Comptes Rendus Geoscience*, vol. 349, no 6, pp. 269–279.
- Duvail, S., Médard, C., Hamerlynck, O. and Nyingi, D.W. (2012) 'Land and water "grabbing" in an East African coastal wetland: the Tana Delta case study', *Water Alternatives*, vol. 5, no. 2, pp. 322–343.
- Duvail, S., Mwakalinga, A., Eijkelenburg, A., Hamerlynck O., Kindinda, K. and Majule, A. (2014) 'Jointly thinking the post-dam future: exchange of local and scientific knowledge on the lakes of the Lower Rufiji, Tanzania', *Hydrological Sciences Journal*, vol. 59, no. 3–4, pp. 713–730.
- Ellis, F. (1998) 'Household strategies and rural livelihood diversification', *The Journal of Development Studies*, vol. 35, no. 1, pp 1–38.
- Eriksson, H. (2012) 'Managing sea cucumber fisheries and aquaculture: studies of social-ecological systems in the Western Indian Ocean'. Unpublished PhD thesis, Stockholm University.
- FAO (2012) *The Status of World Fisheries and Aquaculture 2012*. Food and Agriculture Organisation of the United Nations.
- FAOSTAT (undated) FAO database, FAO, Rome. www.fao.org/faostat/en/#data.
- Feka, N.Z. and Manzano, M.G. (2008) 'The implications of wood exploitation for fish smoking on mangrove ecosystem conservation in the south west province, Cameroon', *Tropical Conservation Science*, vol. 1, no. 3, pp. 222–241.
- Fröcklin, S., De la Torre-Castro, M., Lindström, L., Jiddawi, N.S. and Msuya, F.E. (2012) 'Seaweed mariculture as a development project in Zanzibar, East Africa: a price too high to pay?' *Aquaculture*, vol. 356, pp. 30–39.
- Geheb, K. and Binns, T. (1997) "'Fishing farmers" or "farming fishermen"? The quest for household income and nutritional security on the Kenyan shores of Lake Victoria', *African Affairs*, vol. 96, no. 382, pp. 73–93.
- Geheb, K. and Crean, K. (2003) 'Community-level access and control in the management of Lake Victoria's fisheries', *Journal of Environmental Management*, vol. 67, no. 2, pp. 99–106.
- Hall, R. (2011) 'Land grabbing in Southern Africa: the many faces of the investor rush', *Review of African Political Economy*, vol. 38, no. 128, pp. 193–214.
- Hamerlynck, O. and Duvail, S. (2003) *The Rehabilitation of the Delta of the Senegal River in Mauritania: Fielding the Ecosystem Approach*. IUCN Gland.
- Hamerlynck, O., Duvail, S., Vandepitte, L., Kindinda, K., Nyingi, D.W., Paul, J.L., Yanda, P.Z., Mwakalinga, A.B., Mgya, Y.D. and Snoeks, J. (2011) 'To connect or not to connect? Floods, fisheries and livelihoods in the Lower Rufiji floodplain lakes, Tanzania', *Hydrological Sciences Journal*, vol. 56, no. 8, pp. 1436–1451.
- Hamerlynck, O., Moulaye Zeine, S.A., Mutua J.Y., Mukhwana, L.V. and Yena, M. (2016) 'Reflooding the Faguibine System in Northern Mali: potential benefits and challenges', *African Journal of Aquatic Science*, vol. 41, no. 1, pp. 109–117.
- Hardin, G. (1968) 'The tragedy of the commons', *Science*, vol. 162, no. 3859, pp. 1243–1248.
- Harrison, L.E. and Huntington, S.P. (2000) *Culture Matters: How Values Shape Human Progress*. Basic Books.

- Hoegh-Guldberg, O., Mumby, P.J., Hooten, A.J., Steneck, R.S., Greenfield, P., Gomez, E., Harvell, C.D., Sale, P.F., Edwards, A.J., Caldeira, K., Knowlton, N., Eakin, C.M., Iglesias-Prieto, R., Muthiga, N., Bradbury, R.H., Dubi, A. and Hatziolos, M.E. (2007) 'Coral reefs under ocean acidification under rapid climate change', *Science*, vol. 318, pp. 1737–1742.
- Jacob, J.-P. (2003) *Fishing Rights on the Floodplains of Gwendégoué, Winye Country, Central Western Burkina Faso*. IIED Issue Paper No. 121.
- Kipkemboi, J., van Dam, A.A., Ikiara, M.M. and Denny, P. (2007) 'Integration of smallholder wetland aquaculture–agriculture systems (fingerponds) into riparian farming systems on the shores of Lake Victoria, Kenya: socio–economics and livelihoods', *The Geographical Journal*, vol. 173, pp. 257–272.
- Kolding, J. and van Zwieten, P.A.M. (2011) 'The tragedy of our legacy: how do global management discourses affect small scale fisheries in the South', *Forum for Development Studies*, vol. 38, no. 3, pp. 267–297.
- Kolding, J. and van Zwieten, P.A.M. (2012) 'Relative lake level fluctuations and their influence on productivity and resilience in tropical lakes and reservoirs', *Fisheries Research*, vol. 115, pp. 99–109.
- Kolding, J. and van Zwieten, P.A.M. (2014) 'Sustainable fishing in inland waters', *Journal of Limnology*, vol. 73, pp. 128–144.
- Kolding, J., van Zwieten, P., Mkumbo, O., Silsbe, G. and Hecky, R. (2008) 'Are the Lake Victoria fisheries threatened by exploitation or eutrophication? Towards an ecosystem–based approach to management', in G. Bianchi and H.R. Skjoldal (eds) *The Ecosystem Approach to Fisheries*. CABI, pp. 309–350.
- Komakech, H.C., van Der Zaag, P. and van Koppen, B. (2012) 'The last will be first: water transfers from agriculture to cities in the Pangani river basin, Tanzania', *Water Alternatives*, vol. 5, no. 3, pp. 700–720.
- Maltby, E. and Acreman, M.C. (2011) 'Ecosystem services of wetlands: pathfinder for a new paradigm', *Hydrological Sciences Journal*, vol. 56, no. 8, pp. 1341–1359.
- Margulis, M.E., McKeon, N. and Borrás, S.M. Jr. (2013) 'Land grabbing and global governance: critical perspectives', *Globalizations*, vol. 10, no. 1, pp. 1–23.
- Marquette, C.M., Koranteng, K.A., Overå, R. and Aryeetey, E.B.D. (2002) 'Small-scale fisheries, population dynamics, and resource use in Africa: the case of Moree, Ghana', *AMBIO: A Journal of the Human Environment*, vol. 31, no. 4, pp. 324–336.
- Matsuoka, T., Nakashima, T. and Nagasawa, N. (2005) 'A review of ghost fishing: scientific approaches to evaluation and solutions', *Fisheries Science*, vol. 71, pp. 691–702.
- McClanahan, T.R., Graham, N.A., MacNeil, M.A., Muthiga, N.A., Cinner, J.E., Bruggemann, J.H. and Wilson, S.K. (2011) 'Critical thresholds and tangible targets for ecosystem-based management of coral reef fisheries', *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, vol. 108, no. 41, pp. 17230–17233.
- McClanahan, T.R., Graham, N.A.J., Wilson, S., Letourner, Y. and Fisher, R. (2009) 'Effects of fisheries closure size, age, and history of compliance on coral reef fish communities in the western Indian Ocean', *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, vol. 396, pp. 99–109.
- Mehta, L., Veldwisch, G.J. and Franco, J. (2012) 'Introduction to the special issue: Water grabbing? Focus on the (re)appropriation of finite water resources', *Water Alternatives*, vol. 5, no. 2, pp. 193–207.
- Mmopelwa, G. and Ngwenya, B.N. (2010) 'Constraints and potentials of the fish market in the Okavango Delta, Botswana', *African Journal of Agricultural Research*, vol. 5, no. 23, pp. 3176–3184.
- Mölsä, H., Reynolds, J.E., Coenen, E.J. and Lindqvist, O.V. (1999) 'Fisheries research towards resource management on Lake Tanganyika', *Hydrobiologia*, vol. 407, pp. 1–24.
- Müller, C., Cramer, W., Hare, W.L. and Lotze-Campen, H. (2011) 'Climate change risks for African agriculture', *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, vol. 108, no. 11, pp. 4313–4315.

- Munga, C., Ndegwa, S., Fulanda, B., Manyala, J., Kimani, E., Ohtomi, J. and Vanreusel, A. (2012) 'Bottom shrimp trawling impacts on species distribution and fishery dynamics: Ungwana Bay fishery Kenya before and after the 2006 trawl ban', *Fisheries Science*, vol. 78, no. 2, pp. 209–219.
- Myers, N., Mittermeier, R.A., Mittermeier, C.G., Da Fonseca, G.A.B. and Kent, J. (2000) 'Biodiversity hotspots for conservation priorities', *Nature*, vol. 403, pp. 853–858.
- Nelson, G.C., Bennett, E., Berhe, A.A., Cassman, K., DeFries, R.S., Dietz, T., Dobermann, A., Dobson, A., Janetos, A., Levy, M.A., Marco, D., Nakicenovic, N., O'Neill, B., Norgaard, R., Petschel-Held, G., Ojima, D., Pingali, P., Watson, R. and Zurek, M. (2006) *Anthropogenic Drivers of Ecosystem Change: an Overview*. Columbia University Academic Commons, <http://dx.doi.org/10.7916/D8125RDD>.
- Njock, J.C. and Westlund, L. (2010) 'Migration, resource management and global change: experiences from fishing communities in West and Central Africa', *Marine Policy*, vol. 34, no. 4, pp. 752–760.
- Nunan, F. (2010) 'Mobility and fisherfolk livelihoods on Lake Victoria: implications for vulnerability and risk', *Geoforum*, vol. 41, no. 5, pp. 776–785.
- Odada, E.O., Olago, D.O., Kulindwa, K., Ntiba, M. and Wandiga, S. (2004) 'Mitigation of environmental problems in Lake Victoria, East Africa: causal chain and policy options analyses', *AMBIO: A Journal of the Human Environment*, vol. 33, no. 1, pp. 13–23.
- Ostrom, E. (1990) *Governing the Commons: The Evolution of Institutions for Collective Action*. Cambridge University Press.
- Parnell, S. and Walawege, R. (2011) 'Sub-Saharan African urbanisation and global environmental change', *Global Environmental Change*, vol. 21, pp. S12–S20.
- Paul, J.-L., Duvail, S. and Hamerlynck, O. (2011) 'Appropriation des ressources "naturelles" et criminalisation des communautés paysannes. Le cas du Rufiji, Tanzanie', *Civilisations*, vol. 60, no. 1, pp. 143–175.
- Pauly, D., Christensen, V., Guénette, S., Pitcher, T.J., Sumaila, U.R., Walters, C.J., Watson, R. and Zeller, D. (2002) 'Towards sustainability in world fisheries', *Nature*, vol. 418, pp. 689–695.
- Pinto, R., De Jonge, V.N. and Marques, J.C. (2014) 'Linking biodiversity indicators, ecosystem functioning, provision of services and human well-being in estuarine systems: application of a conceptual framework', *Ecological Indicators*, vol. 36, pp. 644–655.
- Ratner, B.D. and Allison, E.H. (2012) 'Wealth, rights, and resilience: an agenda for governance reform in small-scale fisheries', *Development Policy Review*, vol. 30, no. 4, pp. 371–398.
- Richmond, M.D., Wilson, J.D.K., Mgaya, Y.D. and Le Vay, L. (2002) 'An analysis of small-holder opportunities in fisheries, coastal and related enterprises in the floodplain and delta areas of the Rufiji River, Tanzania', *Rufiji Environment Management Project. REMP Technical Report, No. 25*.
- Ringold, P.L., Boyd, J., Landers, D. and Weber, M. (2013) 'What data should we collect? A framework for identifying indicators of ecosystem contributions to human well-being', *Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment*, vol. 11, pp. 98–105.
- Robertson, S.A. and Luke, W.R.Q. (1993) *Kenya Coastal Forests: The Report of the NMK/WWF Coast Forest Survey*. WWF Project 3256, Coast Forest Status, Conservation and Management.
- Samoilys M.A. and Kanyange N.W. (2008) *Natural Resource Dependence, Livelihoods and Development: Perceptions from Tanga, Tanzania*. IUCN.
- Scholes, R., Hassan, R. and Ash, N.J. (2005) *Millennium Ecosystem Assessment. Ecosystems and Human Well-being: Current State and Trends*. Island Press.
- Seeley, J.A. and Allison, E.H. (2005) 'HIV/AIDS in fishing communities: challenges to delivering antiretroviral therapy to vulnerable groups', *AIDS Care: Psychological and Socio-medical Aspects of AIDS/HIV*, vol. 17, no. 6, pp. 688–697.
- Shanahan, T.M., Overpeck, J.T., Anchukaitis, K.J., Beck, J.W., Cole, J.E., Dettman, D.L., Peck, J.A., Scholz, C.A. and King, J.W. (2009) 'Atlantic forcing of persistent drought in West Africa', *Science*, vol. 324, pp. 377–380.

- Smith, S.V. (1978) 'Coral-reef area and the contributions of reefs to processes and resources of the world's oceans', *Nature*, vol. 273, no. 5659, pp. 225–226.
- Spalding, M.D., Ravilious, C. and Green, E.P. (2001) *World Atlas of Coral Reefs*. University of California Press.
- Steneck, R.S. (2009) 'Marine conservation: moving beyond Malthus', *Current Biology*, vol. 19, no. 3, pp. R117–R119.
- Thiollay, J.M. (2006) 'Large bird declines with increasing human pressure in savanna woodlands (Burkina Faso)', *Biodiversity & Conservation*, vol. 15, no. 7, pp. 2085–2108.
- Tockner, K. and Stanford, J.A. (2002) 'Riverine floodplains: present state and future trends', *Environmental Conservation*, vol. 29, pp. 308–330.
- Turpie, J., Smith, B., Emerton, L. and Barnes, B. (1999) *Economic Value of the Zambezi Basin Wetlands*. IUCN Southern Africa.
- Turpie, J.K. (2000) 'The use and value of natural resources of the Rufiji floodplain and delta, Tanzania', *Rufiji Environment Management Project Technical Report 17*, Dar es Salaam.
- Tweddle, D. (2010) 'Overview of the Zambezi River System: its history, fish fauna, fisheries, and conservation', *Aquatic Ecosystem Health & Management*, vol. 13, no. 3, pp. 224–240.
- United Nations, Department of Economic and Social Affairs, Population Division (2013) *World Population Prospects: The 2012 Revision, Volume I: Comprehensive Tables ST/ESA/SER.A/336*.
- van den Bossche, P. and Delespaux, V. (2011) 'Options for the control of tsetse-transmitted livestock trypanosomosis. An epidemiological perspective', *Veterinary Parasitology*, vol. 181, no. 1, pp. 37–42.
- Wamukota, A.W., Cinner, J.E. and McClanahan, T.R. (2012) 'Co-management of coral reef fisheries: a critical evaluation of the literature', *Marine Policy*, vol. 36, no. 2, pp. 481–488.
- Weeratunge, N., Béné, C., Siriwardane, R., Charles, A., Johnson, D., Allison, E.H., Nayak, P.K. and Badjeck, M.-C. (2013) 'Small-scale fisheries through the wellbeing lens', *Fish and Fisheries*, vol. 15, no. 2, pp. 255–279.
- Welcomme, R. (2008) 'World prospects for floodplain fisheries', *Ecology & Hydrobiology*, vol. 8, nos. 2–4, pp. 169–182.
- Welcomme, R.L., Cowx, I.G., Coates, D., Béné, C., Funge-Smith, S., Halls, A. and Lorenzen, K. (2010) 'Inland capture fisheries', *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences*, vol. 365, no. 1554, pp. 2881–2896.
- Weyl, O.L., Ribbink, A.J. and Tweddle, D. (2010) 'Lake Malawi: fishes, fisheries, biodiversity, health and habitat', *Aquatic Ecosystem Health & Management*, vol. 13, no. 3, pp. 241–254.
- Woodhouse, P. (2012) 'Foreign agricultural land acquisition and the visibility of water resource impacts in Sub-Saharan Africa', *Water Alternatives*, vol. 5, no. 2, pp. 208–222.
- World Bank (2009) *Awakening Africa's Sleeping Giant: Prospects for Commercial Agriculture in the Guinea Savannah Zone and Beyond – Directions in Development*. World Bank and FAO.
- World Commission on Dams (2000) *Dams and Development: A New Framework for Decision-Making*. London.
- Zwarts, L., Beukering, P.V., Kone, B. and Wymenga, E. (2005) *The Niger, a Lifeline: Effective Water Management in the Upper Niger Basin*. RIZA, Lelystad.
- Zwieten, P.V., Béné, C., Kolding, J., Brummett, R. and Valbo Jorgensen, J. (eds) (2011) *Review of Tropical Reservoirs and Their Fisheries in Developing Countries: The Cases of the Lake Nasser, Lake Volta and Indo-Gangetic Basin Reservoirs*. FAO Fisheries and Aquaculture Technical Paper 557, FAO.
- Agrawal, A., Cashore, B., Hardin, R., Shepherd, G. and Benson, C. (2013) *Economic contributions of forests*. Background paper prepared for the United Nations Forum on Forests. Tenth session, 8–19 April 2013, Istanbul.
- Boko, M., Niang, I., Nyong, A., Vogel, C., Githeko, A., Medany, M., Osman-Elasha, B., Tabo, R. and Yanda, P. (2007) 'Africa. Climate change 2007: impacts, adaptation and vulnerability'. In: Parry, M.L., Canziani, O.F., Palutikof, J.P., van der Linden, P.J. and Hanson, C.E. (eds) *Contribution of Working Group II to the Fourth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*. Cambridge University Press, pp. 433–467.

- Brautigam, D. (2010) China and the African land grab: the DRC oil palm deal, www.chinaafrica-realstory.com/2010/03/china-and-african-land-grab-drc-oil.html.
- Broughton, A. (2013) 'Land grabbing: a new colonialism', *Green Social Thought: A Magazine of Synthesis and Regeneration*, vol. 6, pp. 25–29.
- Büttner, U. and Hauser, S. (2003) 'Farmers' nutrient management practices in indigenous cropping systems in southern Cameroon', *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*, vol. 100, pp. 103–110.
- Carrière, S.M., Letourmy, P. and McKey, D.B. (2002) 'Effects of remnant trees in fallows on diversity and structure of forest regrowth in a slash-and-burn agricultural system in southern Cameroon', *Journal of Tropical Ecology*, vol. 18, pp. 375–396.
- CIFOR (2012) 'Counting on the environment: the contribution of forests to rural livelihoods', *Conference report of the Poverty Environment Network (PEN)*, www.cifor.org/pen/news-and-events/london-conference.html.
- Coomes, O.T., Takasaki, B. and Rhemtulla, J.M. (2011) 'Land-use poverty traps identified in shifting cultivation systems shape long-term tropical forest cover', *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, vol. 108, no. 34, pp. 13925–13930.
- Degrande, A. and Duguma, B. (2000) *Adoption potential of rotational hedgerow intercropping in the humid lowlands of Cameroon*. Agricultural Research & Extension Network paper 103. Overseas Development Institute, London.
- Diaw, M.C. (1997) *Si, Nda Bot et Ayong: culture itinérante, occupation des sols et droits fonciers au Sud-Cameroun*. Réseau foresterie pour le développement rural 21e. ODI.
- Dixon, J., Gulliver, A. and Gibbon, D. (2001) *Farming systems and poverty: improving farmers' livelihoods in a changing world*. FAO.
- FAOSTAT (various years) FAO database, FAO, Rome. www.fao.org/faostat/en/#data.
- Gockowski, J., Tonye, J., Baker, D., Legg, C., Weise, S., Ndoumbé, M., Tiki-Manga, T. and Fouaguégué, A. (2004) *Characterization and diagnosis of farming systems in the forest margins benchmark of Southern Cameroon*. IITA Social Sciences Working Paper No 1. Ibadan, Nigeria.
- Green, N., Sovacool, B.K. and Hancock, K. (2015) 'Grand designs: assessing the African energy security implications of the grand Inga dam', *African Studies Review*, vol. 58, pp. 133–158.
- Guillemin, R. (1956) 'Evolution de l'agriculture autochtone dans les savanes de l'Oubangui', *Agronomie Tropicale*, vol. 11, pp. 143–176.
- Hauser, S. (2007) 'Plantain (*Musa* spp. AAB) bunch yield and root health response to combinations of mechanical, thermal and chemical nematode control measures on suckers', *African Plant Protection*, vol. 13, pp. 1–15.
- Hauser, S., Bengono, B. and Bitomo, O.E. (2008a) 'Short- and long-term maize yield response to *Mucuna pruriens* and *Pueraria phaseoloides* relay fallow and biomass burning versus mulching in the forest zone of southern Cameroon', *Biological Agriculture and Horticulture*, vol. 26, pp. 1–17.
- Hauser, S., Mekoa, C. and Jacobsen, K. (2008b) 'Bunch yield response of two cultivars of plantain (*Musa* spp., AAB, subgroups French and False horn) to hot-water treatment and fertilizer application planted after forest and bush / grass fallow', *Archives of Agronomy and Soil Science*, vol. 54, pp. 541–556.
- Hauser, S. and Nolte, C. (2002) 'Biomass production and N fixation of five *Mucuna pruriens* varieties and their effect on maize yields in the forest zone of Cameroon', *Journal of Plant Nutrition and Soil Science*, vol. 165, pp. 101–109.
- Hauser, S., Nolte, C. and Carsky, R.J. (2006) What role can planted fallows play in humid and sub-humid West Africa? *Nutrient Cycling in Agroecosystems*, vol. 76, pp. 297–318.
- Hauser, S. and Norgrove, L. (2013) 'Slash-and-burn agriculture, effects of', in Levin S.A. (ed.) *Encyclopedia of Biodiversity*, second edition, vol. 6. Academic Press, pp. 551–562.
- Ickowitz, A. (2011) 'Shifting cultivation and forest pressure in Cameroon', *Agricultural Economics*, vol. 42, no. 2, pp. 207–220.
- IITA (2017) *CGIAR Research Program (CRP) 1.2. Humidtropics: Integrated Systems for the Humid Tropics*. <https://humidtropics.cgiar.org/>.
- Index Mundi (2015) *Congo, The Democratic Republic Of. The Palm Oil Production by Year*. www.indexmundi.com/agriculture/?country=cd&commodity=palm-oil&graph=production.

- Jori, F. and Chardonnet, P. (2001) 'Cane rat farming in Gabon: status and perspective', in Ebedes, H., Reilly, B., van Hoven, W. and Penzhorn, B. (eds) *Sustainable utilization–conservation in practice. Proceedings of the 5th International Wildlife Ranching Symposium*, Pretoria, South Africa
- Kleinschroth, F., Gourlet-Flcury, S., Sist, P., Mortier, F. and Healey, J.R. (2015) Legacy of logging roads in the Congo Basin: How persistent are the scars in forest cover? *Ecosphere*, vol. 6, no. 4, art. 64.
- Laporte, N., Stabach, J., Grosch, R., Lin, T. and Goetz, S. (2007) 'Expansion of industrial logging in Central Africa', *Science*, vol. 316, p. 1451.
- Laudelout, H. (1990) *La jachère forestière sous les tropiques humides*. Unité des Eaux et Forêts, Centre de Recherches Forestières de Chimay. Université Catholique de Louvain.
- Leather, C. (2009) 'Bridging the divide: the reform of global food security governance', *Oxfam Policy and Practice: Agriculture, Food and Land*, vol. 9, no. 6, pp. 68–81.
- Lescuyer, G., Cerutti, P.O., Mendoula, E.E., Eba'a Atyi, R. and Nasi, R. (2010) 'Chainsaw milling in the Congo Basin', in Wit, M. and van Dam, J. (eds) *Chainsaw milling: supplier to local markets*. Tropenbos International, Wageningen.
- Mabika, C.M. and Shapiro, D. (2012) 'School enrollment in the Democratic Republic of the Congo: family economic well-being, gender, and place of residence', *African Population Studies*, vol. 26, no. 2, pp. 197–220.
- Mayaux, P., Bartholomé, E., Fritz, S. and Belward, A. (2004) 'A new land-cover map of Africa for the year 2000', *Journal of Biogeography*, vol. 31, pp. 861–877.
- Mayaux, P., Pekel, J.F., Desclée, B., Donnay, F., Lupi, A., Achard, F., Clerici, M., Bodart, C., Brink, A., Nasi, R. and Belward, A. (2013) 'State and evolution of the African rainforests between 1990 and 2010', *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences*, vol. 368, no. 1625, 20120300.
- Ministère de la Planification et de la Programmation du Développement (2005) Enquête Gabonaise pour le suivi et l'évaluation de la pauvreté (EGEP 2005), Rapport sur les indicateurs de base du bien-être, Libreville. www.oecd.org/fr/cad/efficacite/Gabon%205.pdf.
- Mrunal (2012) [Climate Change] Kyoto Protocol, Carbon Trading, Copenhagen Accord: Meaning, Explained. <http://mrunal.org/2012/09/enb-kyoto.html>.
- Nielsen, M.R., Pouliot, M. and Kim Bakkegaard, R. (2012) 'Combining income and assets measures to include the transitory nature of poverty in assessments of forest dependence: evidence from the Democratic Republic of Congo', *Ecological Economics*, vol. 78, pp. 37–46.
- Nin-Pratt, A., Johnson, M., Magalhaes, E., You, L., Diao, X. and Chamberlin, J. (2011) *Yield gaps and potential agricultural growth in West and Central Africa*. International Food Policy Research Institute.
- Nolte, C., Ondo Zo'o, B. and Dondjang, J.P. (2007) 'Farmer's perception of planted calliandra tree fallows for shortening fallow cycles in southern Cameroon', in Bationo, A., Waswa, B., Kihara, J. and Kimetu, J. (eds) *Advances in integrated soil fertility management in sub-Saharan Africa: challenges and opportunities*. Springer.
- Norgrove, L. (2003) Agrisilviculture systems: timber–food crop systems in the humid tropics', *Paideusis*, vol. 3, pp. 1–15.
- Norgrove, L. and Hauser, S. (2002) 'Measured growth and tree biomass estimates of *Terminalia ivorensis* in the 3 years after thinning to different stand densities in an agrisilvicultural system in southern Cameroon', *Forest Ecology and Management*, vol. 166, pp. 261–270.
- Norgrove, L. and Hauser, S. (2014) 'Improving plantain (*Musa* spp. AAB) yields on smallholder farms in West and Central Africa', *Food Security*, vol. 6, no. 4, pp. 501–514.
- Norgrove, L. and Hauser, S. (2015) Estimating the consequences of fire exclusion for food crop production, soil fertility and fallow recovery in shifting cultivation landscapes in the humid tropics. *Environmental Management*, vol. 55, no. 3, pp. 536–549.
- Norgrove, L., Hauser, S. and Bassanaga, S. (2002) 'Effects of fertilizer regime and type of shade treatment upon growth of *Ricinodendron heudelotii* saplings in a mixed species tree crop system', in Hera, C., Schnug, E., Topbas, T.M., Gunal, H. and Ersahin, S. (eds) *Proceedings, 13th International*

- Fertilizer Symposium. Fertilizers in Context with Resource Management in Agriculture*, Tokat Turkey, pp. 515–521. International Scientific Centre of Fertilizers, Bucharest.
- Ogbe, F.O. Dixon, A.G.O., Hughes, J.A., Alabi, F. and Okechukwu, R.U. (2005) *The status of cassava mosaic disease, cassava begomo-viruses and whitefly vector populations in Nigeria*. International Institute of Tropical Agriculture, Ibadan.
- Oxfam (2011) Blogs, www.oxfamblogs.org/eastafrica/wp-content/uploads/2010/11/Land-Grabbing-in-Africa-Final.pdf.
- République du Cameroun (2003) *Document de stratégie de réduction de la pauvreté*, www.researchchict africa.net/countries/cameroon/Poverty_Reduction_Strategy.pdf.
- Robiglio, V., Lescuyer, G. and Cerutti, P.O. (2013) 'From farmers to loggers: the role of shifting cultivation landscapes in timber production in Cameroon', *Small-scale Forestry*, vol. 12, no. 1, pp. 67–85.
- Robiglio, V., Minang, P.A. and Asare, R. (2011) *On-farm timber production for emission reduction with sustainable benefits at the tropical forest margins*. ASB Policy Brief No. 23. ASB Partnership for the Tropical Forest Margins, Nairobi.
- Robiglio, V., Ngendakumana, S., Gockowski, J., Yemefack, M., Tchienkoua, M., Tchawa, P., Tchoundjeu, Z. and Bolognesi, M. (2010) *Reducing emissions from all land uses in Cameroon*. Final National Report. ASB Partnership for the Tropical Forest Margins, Nairobi.
- Rulli, M.C., Savioli, A. and D'Odorico, P. (2013) 'Global land and water grabbing', *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, vol. 110, no. 3, pp. 892–897.
- Russell, D. (1993) *Resource management strategies in the central African forest zone: a handbook for IITA's humid forest station*. Mimeograph. Humid Forest Station, IITA.
- Russell, D., Mbile, P. and Tchamou, N. (2011) 'Farm and forest in Central Africa: toward an integrated rural development strategy', *Journal of Sustainable Forestry*, vol. 30, nos. 1–2, pp. 111–132.
- Siebert, S., Portmann, F.T. and Döll, P. (2010) 'Global patterns of cropland use intensity', *Remote Sensing*, vol. 2, pp. 1625–1643.
- Snapp, S.S., Rohrbach, D.D., Simtowe, F. and Freeman, H.A. (2002) 'Sustainable soil management options for Malawi: can smallholder farmers grow more legumes?' *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment*, vol. 91, pp. 159–174.
- Sonneveld, B. and Dent, D.L. (2009) 'How good is GLASOD?' *Journal of Environmental Management*, vol. 90, no. 1, pp. 274–283.
- Tueche, R., Norgrove, L., Hauser, S. and Cadisch, G. (2013) 'Tillage and varietal impacts on tomato (*Solanum lycopersicum* L.) production on an Ultisol in central Cameroon', *Soil and Tillage Research*, vol. 128, pp. 1–8.
- United Nations (1997) *United Nations Conference on Environment and Development (UNCED)*, www.un.org/geninfo/bp/enviro.html.
- Vanlauwe, B., Coyne, D., Gockowski, J., Hauser, S., Huising, J., Masso, C., Nziguheba, G., Schut, M. and van Asten, P. (2014) 'Sustainable intensification and the African smallholder farmer', *Current Opinion in Environmental Sustainability*, vol. 8, pp. 15–22.
- von Braun, J. and Meinzen-Dick, R. (2009) *Land grabbing by foreign investors in developing countries: Risks and opportunities*. Policy Brief 13. International Food Policy Research Institute, www.ifpri.org/sites/default/files/publications/bp013all.pdf.
- Waha, K., Müller, C., Bondeau, A., Dietrich, J.P., Kurukulasuriya, P., Heinke, J. and Lotze-Campen, H. (2013) 'Adaptation to climate change through the choice of cropping system and sowing date in sub-Saharan Africa', *Global Environmental Change*, vol. 23, no. 1, pp. 130–143.
- Washington, R., James, R., Pearce, H., Pokam, W.M. and Moufouma-Okia, W. (2013) Congo Basin rainfall climatology: can we believe the climate models? *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences*, vol. 368, no. 1625, 20120296.
- Aw, D. and Diemer, G. (2005) 'Making a large irrigation scheme work: A case study from Mali', *Direction in Development*, World Bank.

- Barbier, E.B. (2003) Upstream dams and downstream water allocation: The case of the Hadejia-Jama'are floodplain, northern Nigeria. *Water Resources Research*, vol. 39, no. 11, 1311, doi:10.1029/2003WR002249.
- Barbiéro, L., Cunnac, S., Mané, L., Lapperrousaz, C., Hammecker, C. and Maeght, J-L. (2001) 'Salt distribution in the Senegal middle valley: Analysis of a saline structure on planned irrigation schemes from N'Galenka creek', *Agricultural Water Management*, vol. 46, pp. 201–213.
- Barry, B., Namara, R.E. and Bahri, A. (2009) 'Better rural livelihoods through improved irrigation management: Office du Niger (Mali)', in R. Lenton and M. Muller (eds) *Integrated Water Resources Management in Practice: Better water Management for Development*, Earthscan.
- Boelee, E. and Madsen, H. (2006) *Irrigation and Schistosomiasis in Africa: Ecological Aspects*. Colombo, Sri Lanka. International Water Management Institute.
- Borgia, C., García-Bolaños, M. and Mateos, L. (2012) 'Patterns of variability in large-scale irrigation schemes in Mauritania', *Agricultural Water Management*, vol. 112, pp. 1–12.
- CFI (2013) *Revamping the Gezira Scheme: Sudan Seeks Food Security with Rice*. <http://cfi.co/africa/2013/08/revamping-the-gezira-scheme-sudan-seeks-food-security-with-rice/>.
- Cotula, L., Vermeulen, S., Leonard, R. and Keeley J. (2009) *Land Grab or Development Opportunity? Agricultural Investments and International Land Deals in Africa*. International Institute for Environment and Development (IIED).
- De Wit, M. and Stankiewicz, J. (2006) 'Changes in surface water supply across Africa with predicted climate change', *Science*, vol. 311, no. 5769, pp. 1917–1921.
- Dillon, A. (2010) *Do Differences in the Scale of Irrigation Projects Generate Different Impacts on Poverty and Production?* IFPRI Discussion Paper 01022.
- FAO (2005a) *Irrigation in Africa in Figures*. Aquastat survey 2005, FAO Water Report No. 29.
- FAO (2005b) 'Nigeria', in *Irrigation in Africa in Figures*. Aquastat survey 2005, FAO Water Report No. 29.
- FAO (2011) *The State of the World's Land and Water Resources for Food and Agriculture: Managing Systems at Risk*. FAO and Earthscan.
- FAO (2016a) AQUASTAT database. www.fao.org/nr/water/aquastat/data/query/index.html?lang=en.
- FAOSTAT (undated) FAO database, FAO, Rome. www.fao.org/faostat/en/#data.
- Gebregziabher, G., Namara, R.E. and Holden, S. (2009) 'Poverty reduction with irrigation investment: An empirical case study from Tigray, Ethiopia', *Agricultural Water Management*, vol. 96, pp. 1837–1843.
- Guvele, C.A. (2001) 'Gains from crop diversification in the Sudan Gezira scheme', *Agricultural Systems*, vol. 70, pp. 319–333.
- Hamid, S.H., Mohamed, A.A. and Mohamed, Y.A. (2011) 'Towards a performance-oriented management for large-scale irrigation systems: case study, Rahad scheme, Sudan', *Irrigation and Drainage Systems*, vol. 60, pp. 20–34.
- Hulsebosch, J. and Ombarra, D. (1995) 'Towards gender balance in irrigation management: experiences in Kenya South-West Kano Project', *Irrigation and Drainage Systems*, vol. 9, pp. 1–14.
- IDA (2007) *IDA at Work. Water for Food. Improving Services for the Poor*. World Bank.
- IFAD (2005) *Participatory Irrigation Development Programme (PIDP) in the United Republic of Tanzania: Supervision Report*. IFAD.
- IFAD (2006) *Upper East Region Land Conservation and Smallholder Rehabilitation Project (Lacosrep) Phase II. Interim Evaluation Report*. IFAD.
- IFAD (2007) *Gender and Water: Securing Water for Improved Rural Livelihoods – The Multiples-Uses System Approach*. IFAD.
- Inocencio, A., Kikuchi, M., Tonosaki, M., Maruyama, A., Merrey, D., Sally, H. and De Jong, I. (2007) *Costs and Performance of Irrigation Projects: A Comparison of Sub-Saharan Africa and Other Developing Regions, IWMI Research Report 109*. IWMI, Colombo.
- Kiunsi, R.B. (2006) 'The extent and effects of salinity and alkalinity in community base irrigation schemes in the dryland areas of Tanzania, Case study: Chali and Bahi irrigation schemes in Dodoma region', *Journal of Building and Land Development*, vol. 13, pp. 41–48.

- Kizito, F., Williams, T.O., McCartney, M. and Erkossa, T. (2013) 'Green and blue water dimensions of foreign direct investment in biofuel and food production in West Africa: the case of Ghana and Mali', in T. Allan, M. Keulertz, S. Sojamo and J. Warner (eds) *Handbook of Land and Water Grabs in Africa: Foreign Direct Investment and Food and Water Security*. Routledge, pp. 337–358.
- Lipton, M., Litchfield, J. and Faurès, J-M. (2003) 'The effects of irrigation on poverty: a framework for analysis', *Water Policy*, vol. 5, pp. 413–427.
- MacDonald, A.M., Bonsor, H.C., Dochartaigh, B.E.O. and Taylor, R.G. (2012) 'Quantitative maps of groundwater resources in Africa', *Environmental Research Letters*, vol. 7 (024009). doi:10.1088/1748-9326/7/2/024009.
- Mather, D. and Kelly, V. (2012) *Farmers' Production and Marketing Response to Rice Price Increases and Fertilizer Subsidies in the Office du Niger*. MSU International Development Working Paper 129, Michigan State University.
- Nakano, Y., Bamba, I., Diagne, A., Otsuka, K. and Kajisa, K. (2011) *The Possibility of a Rice Green Revolution in Large-Scale Irrigation Schemes in Sub-Saharan Africa*. Policy Research Working Paper 5560. World Bank.
- Namara, R.E., Hanjra, M.A., Castillo, G.E., Ravnborg, H.M., Smith, L. and van Koppen, B. (2010) 'Agricultural water management and poverty linkages', *Agricultural Water Management*, vol. 97, pp. 520–527.
- Neven, D. and Reardon, T. (2004) 'The rise of Kenyan supermarkets and the evolution of their horticulture product procurement systems', *Development Policy Review*, vol. 22, pp. 669–699.
- Pavelic, P., Giordano, M., Keraita, B., Ramesh, V. and Rao, T. (eds) (2012) *Groundwater Availability and Use in Sub-Saharan Africa: A Review of 15 Countries*. International Water Management Institute, Sri Lanka.
- Ruffeis, D., Loiskandl, W., Spendingwimmer, R., Schönerklee-Grasser, M., Bekele, S., Boelee, E. and Wallner, K. (2010) 'Assessment of potential environmental impacts of two large scale irrigation schemes in Ethiopia', *Ethiopian Journal of Development Research*, vol. 32, pp. 63–105.
- Saleth, R.M., Namara, R.E. and Samad, M. (2003) 'Dynamics of irrigation-poverty linkage in rural India: analytical framework and empirical analysis', *Water Policy*, vol. 5, pp. 459–473.
- Shah, T., Burke, J. and Villholth, K. (2007) 'Groundwater: a global assessment of scale and significance', in D. Molden (ed.) *Water for Food Water for Life: A Comprehensive Assessment of Water Management in Agriculture*. Earthscan and IWMI.
- Sidibé, Y. and Williams, T.O. (2016) 'Agricultural land investments and water management in the Office du Niger, Mali: options for improved water pricing', *Water International*, vol. 41, no. 5, pp. 738–755.
- Umali, D.L. (1993) *Irrigation-Induced Salinity: A Growing Problem for Development*. World Bank Technical Paper No. 215. World Bank.
- van Asten, P.J.A., Barbiéro, L., Wopereis, M.C.S., Maeght, J.L. and van der Zec, S.E.A.T.M. (2003) 'Actual and potential salt-related soil degradation in an irrigated rice scheme in the Sahelian zone of Mauritania', *Agricultural Water Management*, vol. 60, pp. 13–32.
- van Koppen, B. (1998) 'Water rights, gender and poverty alleviation: inclusion and exclusion of women and men smallholders in public irrigation infrastructure development', *Agriculture and Human Values*, vol. 15, pp. 361–374.
- van Koppen, B. and Hussain, I. (2007) 'Gender and irrigation: overview of issues and options', *Irrigation and Drain*, vol. 56, pp. 289–298.
- Verwey, P.M.J. and Vermeulen, P.D. (2011) 'Influence of irrigation on the level, salinity and flow of groundwater at Vaalharts irrigation scheme', *Water SA*, vol. 37, pp. 155–164.
- von Braun, J. and Meinzen-Dick, R. (2009) *Land Grabbing by Foreign Investors in Developing Countries: Risks and Opportunities*. IFPRI Policy Brief 13.
- Williams, T.O. (2011) 'Exploiting local, regional and international demand', in K.K. Yumkella, P.M. Kormawa, T.M. Roepstorff and A.M. Hawkins (eds) *Agribusiness for Africa's Prosperity*. UNIDO, Vienna, pp. 135–164.

- Williams, T.O., Gyampoh, B., Kizito, F. and Namara, R. (2012) 'Water implications of large-scale land acquisitions in Ghana', *Water Alternatives*, vol. 5, pp. 243–265.
- World Bank (2000) *Sudan. Options for the Sustainable Development of the Gezira Scheme*. Report No. 20398-SU. World Bank.
- World Bank (2007) *Investment in Agricultural Water for Poverty Reduction and Economic Growth in Sub-Saharan Africa*. Synthesis Report, A Collaborative Program of AFDB, FAO, IFAD, IWMI and the World Bank.
- World Bank (2010a) *The World Bank and the Gezira Scheme in the Sudan. Political Economy of Irrigation Reforms*. World Bank.
- World Bank (2010b) *Rising Global Interest in Farmland: Can It Yield Sustainable and Equitable Benefits?* World Bank.
- World Bank (2013) *Growing Africa. Unlocking the Potential of Agribusiness*. World Bank.
- Zoomers, A. (2010) 'Globalisation and the foreignisation of space: seven processes driving the current global land grab', *Journal of Peasant Studies*, vol. 37, no. 2, pp. 429–447.
- Zwarteveen, M. (2006) *Wedlock or deadlock? Feminists' attempts to engage irrigation engineers*. PhD thesis, Wageningen University.
- Banzhaf M., Maikorema Z., Djimrao I., 2012. Expériences du Niger dans Aménagement et gestion des bassins versants. Etude de cas, in Deygout et al. *Systèmes de production durables en zones sèches, quels enjeux pour la coopération au développement?* AFD, IRAM.
- Bender H., 2007. GTZ – Projet EON Tchad. Aménagement des bas-fonds à l'aide de seuils d'épandages. Sécurisation des bases de vie dans les zones des réfugiés à l'Est du Tchad en coopération avec le Programme de développement décentralisé d'Assounga – Biltine – Ouara, PRODABO.
- Bonnet B., 2012. Analyse de quelques expériences de gestion locale des ressources naturelles communes au Sahel. In *La grande muraille verte. Capitalisation des recherches et valorisation des savoirs locaux*. Ss la coordination Pr. A. Dia, Dr R. Duponnois, IRD, pp. 395–411.
- Bonnet B., Guibert B., 2012. Vulnérabilités et efforts d'adaptation des familles de pasteurs face aux crises récurrentes. Enseignements tirés de l'analyse de l'activité pastorale dans les trajectoires familiales, s.l., ECliS-ANR-IRAM.
- Choplin A., Pliez O., 2013. *Un Sahara, des Sahara-s. Lumières sur un espace déclaré 'zone grise'*. Université Paris-Est.
- Deygout P., Tréboux M., Bonnet B., 2012. *Systèmes de production durables en zones sèches, quels enjeux pour la coopération au développement?* Philippe Deygout, Marion Tréboux avec l'appui de Bernard Bonnet, MEE Direction générale de la mondialisation, du développement et du partenariat, AFD, IRAM. Rapport présenté au Forum Mondial de l'Eau et à Rio +20.
- Dollé V., 1982. La D'Mane: brebis des palmeraies, in *Productions pastorales et sociétés*, N 10, Maison des Sciences et de l'Homme Editeur.
- Dollé V., 1985. *Agriculture mauritanienne et recherche*. DSA-CIRAD.
- FAOSTAT (undated) FAO database, FAO, Rome. www.fao.org/faostat/en/#data.
- Godard V., Dollé V., Vayssières J-F., 1990. *Un diagnostic rapide pour l'agriculture oasienne. Mise au point méthodologique pour l'utilisation de données satellitaires SPOT dans la région de l'Assaba mauritanien*. Options méditerranéennes, série A/n 11, 1990 – Les systèmes agricoles oasiens, pp. 91–102.
- Ichaou A., Guibert B., 2009. *De la dune fixée à la cuvette retrouvée. L'exemple du projet d'appui à la gestion des ressources naturelles au Niger*. Karkara-IRAM.
- Institut National de la Statistique (INS) et Macro International Inc, 2007. *Enquête Démographique et de Santé et à Indicateurs Multiples du Niger 2006*. Calverton, MD: INS et Macro International Inc.
- Jouve P., 2012. Les oasis du Maghreb, des agro-écosystèmes de plus en plus menacés. Comment renforcer leur durabilité? *Courrier de l'environnement de l'INRA* no. 62.
- Jouve P., Raymond L., Hassan M., 2005. Du déclin à la régénération des oasis de la région de Tata (Maroc). *Symposium international pour le développement agricole des systèmes oasiens*. 7–10 March 2005, Erfoud Maroc
- Lacoste Y., 1987. *Encyclopedia universalis* p. 13. Oasis.

- Mendelsohn J., 2006. *Farming systems in Namibia*. Namibia National Farmers Union, Ambassade de France en Namibie.
- Monod T., 1968. Les bases d'une division géographique du monde saharien. *Bulletin de l'IFAN*, 30, B (1), Dakar, pp. 269–288.
- Ostrom E., 1990. *Governing the Commons: The Evolution of Institutions for Collective Action*. Cambridge University Press.
- Penot M., Martinez Sanchez A.F., Apriyana Y., 2002. Les systèmes de production des jardins de Tabelot, in *Etude des jardins de Tabelot et des Bagzan dans la Massif de l'Air, contribution au développement local dans le Nord Niger*. CNEARC, ONG TILALT, pp. 16–30.
- Pini G., Tarchiani V., 2007a. *Les systèmes de production agro-sylvo-pastoraux du Niger : description et analyse*. Centre polytechnique de Turin.
- Pini G., Tarchiani V., 2007b. *Les systèmes de production agro-sylvo-pastoraux du Niger: La caractérisation agro-écologique*. Turin: Centro Città del Terzo Mondo. Politecnico di Torino.
- Plateforme Pastorale Tchadienne., 2013. *Déclaration de N'Djaména, Élevage pastoral, une contribution au développement et à la sécurité des espaces saharo-sahéliens*. Colloque Régional, Conférence Ministérielle 27–29 May. République du Tchad, AFD, UE, CSAO, FIDA, IUCN, DDC.
- Retaille., 1986. Les oasis dans une géographie méridienne Sahara-Sahel. *Cahiers géographiques de Rouen*, n 26.
- Riou., 1988. Bioclimatologie des oasis. *Séminaire sur les systèmes agricoles oasiens*. Tozeur, Tunisie, 19–21 November.
- Schmitz J., 2000. L'islam en Afrique de l'Ouest: les méridiens et les parallèles. *Autrepart*, vol. 16, pp. 117–137.
- Toutain G., Dollé V., Ferry M., 1989. Situation des systèmes oasiens en régions chaudes. *Communication présentée au séminaire sur "Les systèmes agricoles oasiens"*, Tozeur, Tunisia, 19–21 November 1988. Options méditerranéennes, série A/n 11, 1990 – Les systèmes agricoles oasiens, pp. 7–18.
- Vandecandelaere E., 2012. Safran de Taliouine AOP: la mise en place d'une appellation d'origine pour promouvoir une approche durable dans les montagnes sèches de l'Anti-Atlas au Maroc. Etude de cas, in Deygout et al. *Systèmes de production durables en zones sèches, quels enjeux pour la coopération au développement?* AFD, IRAM.
- DAFF (2012) *Abstract of Agricultural Statistics*. Directorate of Statistics and Economic Analysis, Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries, Pretoria.
- FAOSTAT (undated) FAO database, FAO, Rome. www.fao.org/faostat/en/#data.
- Hortgro (2015) *Key Deciduous Fruit Statistics 2015*. Paarl, South Africa.
- IFAD (2014) *IFAD's Approach in Small Island Developing States: A Global Response to Island Voices for Food Security*. IFAD.
- Kotze, M. (2013) Economic position of deciduous fruit producers. Unpublished paper. Paarl, South Africa.
- SAWIS (2013) *South African Wine Industry Statistics no 37*. Paarl, South Africa.
- UNECA (n.d.) *Climate Change in the African Small Island Developing States: From Vulnerability to Resilience – The Paradox of the Small*, UNECA, Addis Ababa.
- van Wyk, G. and van Niekerk, P. (2013) The cost of wine grape cultivation and top achievers in difficult times. *WynBoer*, 284: 73–77.
- Warburton M. and Schulze R. (2006) *Climate Change and the South African Commercial Forestry Sector. An Initial Study*. ACRUcons Report 54, Forestry South Africa. www.forestry.co.za.
- Amoah, P., Keraita, B., Akple, M., Drechsel, P., Abaidoo R. C. and Konradsen, F. (2011) *Low Cost Options for Health Risk Reduction Where Crops are Irrigated with Polluted Water in West Africa*. IWMI Research Report Series, no. 141, Colombo, Sri Lanka.
- Battersby, J. (2011) *The State of Urban Food Insecurity in Cape Town*. Urban Food Security Series, no 11, Queen's University and AFSUN.
- Bopda, A., Brummett, R., Dury, S., Elong, P., Foto-Menbohan, S., Gockowski, J., Kana, C., Kengue, J., Ngonthe, R., Nolte, C., Soua, N., Tanawa, E., Tchouendjeu, Z. and Temple, L.

- (2010) 'Urban farming systems in Yaoundé: building a mosaic', in G. Prain, N.K. Karanja and D. Lee-Smith (eds) *African Urban Harvest: Agriculture in the Cities of Cameroon, Kenya and Uganda*. Springer and IDRC.
- Cofie, O., van Veenhuizen, R., de Vreede, V. and Maessen, S. (2010) 'Waste management for nutrient recovery: options and challenges for urban agriculture', *Urban Agriculture Magazine*, vol. 23, pp. 3–7.
- Cole, D. C., Lee-Smith, D. and Nasinyama, G. W. (eds) (2008) *Healthy City Harvests: Generating Evidence to Guide Policy on Urban Agriculture*. CIP/Urban Harvest and Makerere University Press.
- Crush, J., Hovorka, A. and Tevera, D. (2010) *Urban Food Production and Household Food Security in Southern African Cities*. Urban Food Security Series, no 4, Queen's University and AFSUN.
- Danso, G., Keraita, B. and Afrane, Y. (2002) *Farming Systems in Urban Agriculture, Accra, Ghana: With Special Focus on its Profitability, Wastewater Use and Added Malaria Risk*. Consultancy report submitted to FAO-Ghana office via International Water Management Institute
- David, S., Lee-Smith, D., Kyaligonza, J., Mangeni, W., Kimeze, S., Aliguma, L., Lubowa A. and Nasinyama, G. (2010) 'Changing trends in urban agriculture in Kampala', in G. Prain, N.K. Karanja and D. Lee-Smith (eds) *African Urban Harvest: Agriculture in the Cities of Cameroon, Kenya and Uganda*. Springer and IDRC.
- Denninger, M., Egero, B. and Lee-Smith, D. (1998) *Urban Food Production; A Survival Strategy of Urban Households*. Report of a Workshop on East and Southern Africa, Regional Land Management Unit (RELMA) and Mazingira Institute, Nairobi.
- Dongmo, T., Meffeja, F., Fotso, J.M. and Nolte, C. (2010) 'Crop-livestock integration in the urban farming systems of Yaounde', in G. Prain, N.K. Karanja and D. Lee-Smith (eds) *African Urban Harvest: Agriculture in the Cities of Cameroon, Kenya and Uganda*. Springer and IDRC.
- Drechsel, P. and Dongus, S. (2010) 'Dynamics and sustainability of urban agriculture: examples from Sub-Saharan Africa', *Sustainability Science*, vol. 5, no. 1, pp. 69–78.
- Drechsel, P., Graefe, S., Sonou, M. and Cofie, O.O. (2006) *Informal Irrigation in Urban West Africa: An Overview*. IWMI Research Report, no. 102, Colombo, Sri Lanka.
- Drechsel, P., Keraita, B. and Amoah, P. (2012) Safer irrigation Practices for Reducing Vegetable Contamination in Urban Sub-Saharan Africa: An Illustrated Guide for Farmers and Extension Officers. International Water Management Institute, Accra.
- Dubbeling, M., deZeeuw, H. and van Veenhuizen, R. (2010) *Cities, Poverty and Food: Multi-stakeholder Policy and Planning in Urban Agriculture*. Practical Action.
- Egziabher, A.G., Lee-Smith, D., Maxwell, D.G., Memon, P.A., Mougeot, L.J.A. and Sawio, C.J. (1994) *Cities Feeding People: An Examination of Urban Agriculture in East Africa*. IDRC.
- FAO (2008) *State of Food Insecurity in the World 2008: High Food Prices and Food Security – Threats and Opportunities*. FAO.
- FAO (2012a) *Growing Greener Cities in Africa: First Status Report on Urban and Peri-Urban Horticulture in Africa*. FAO.
- FAO (2012b) *On-Farm Practices for the Safe Use of Wastewater in Urban and Peri-Urban Horticulture: A Training Handbook for Farmer Field Schools*. FAO.
- Foeken, D. (2006) *'To Subsidize my Income': Urban Farming in an East African Town*. Brill.
- Foeken, D., Sofer, M. and Mlozi, M. (2004) *Urban Agriculture in Tanzania: Issues of Sustainability*. ASC Research Report, vol. 75. ASC.
- Frayne, B., Pendleton, W., Crush, J., Acquah, B., Battersby-Lennard, J., Bras, E., Chiweza, A., Dlamini, T., Fincham, R., Kroll, F., Leduka, C., Mosha, A., Mulenga, C., Mvula, P., Pomuti, A., Raimundo, I., Rudolph, M., Ruysenaa, S., Simelane, N., Tevera, D., Tsoka, M., Tawodzera, G. and Zanamwe, L. (2010) *The State of Urban Food Insecurity in Southern Africa*. Urban Food Security Series, no. 2, Queen's University and AFSUN.
- Hovorka, A. and Lee-Smith, D. (2006) 'Gendering the urban agriculture agenda', in R. van Veenhuizen (ed.) *Cities Farming for the Future: Urban Agriculture for Green and Productive Cities*. RUAF Foundation, IDRC and IIRR.

- Karanja, N., Njenga, M., Gathuru, K., Karanja, A. and Munyao, P.M. (2010) 'Crop–livestock–waste interactions in Nakuru's urban agriculture', in G. Prain, N.K. Karanja and D. Lee-Smith (eds) *African Urban Harvest: Agriculture in the Cities of Cameroon, Kenya and Uganda*. Springer and IDRC.
- Keraita, B., Jimenez, B. and Drechsel, P. (2008) 'Extent and implications of agricultural re-use of untreated, partly treated and diluted wastewater in developing countries', *CABI Reviews: Perspectives in Agriculture, Veterinary Science, Nutrition and Natural Resources*, vol. 3, no. 58.
- Lee-Smith, D. (2010) 'Cities feeding people: an update on urban agriculture in equatorial Africa', *Environment and Urbanization*, vol. 22, no. 2, pp. 483–499.
- Lee-Smith, D. (2013) 'Which way for UPA in Africa?' *CITY*, vol. 17, pp. 69–84.
- Lee-Smith, D. and Memon, P.A. (1994), 'Urban agriculture in Kenya', in A.G. Egziabher, D. Lee-Smith, D.G. Maxwell, P.A. Memon, L.J.A. Mougeot and C.J. Sawio (eds) *Cities Feeding People: An Examination of Urban Agriculture in East Africa*. IDRC.
- Mascarenhas, O. (1999) 'Kigogo and Hananasif in Dar-es-Salaam, Tanzania: gender aspects of urbanization and natural resource management', in D. Lee-Smith (ed.) *Women Managing Resources: African Research on Gender, Urbanization and Environment*, Mazingira Institute, Nairobi, pp. 52–79.
- Mougeot, L.J.A. (2000) 'Urban agriculture: definition, presence, potentials and risks', in N. Bakker, M. Dubbeling, S. Gundel, U. Sabel-Koschela and H. de Zeeuw (eds) *Growing Cities, Growing Food: Urban Agriculture on the Policy Agenda – A Reader on Urban Agriculture*. Deutsche Stiftung für Internationale Entwicklung (DSE).
- Njenga, M., Romney, D., Karanja, N., Gathuru, K., Kimani, S., Carsan, S. and Frost, W. (2010) 'Recycling nutrients from organic wastes in Kenya's capital city', in G. Prain, N.K. Karanja and D. Lee-Smith (eds) *African Urban Harvest: Agriculture in the Cities of Cameroon, Kenya and Uganda*. Springer and IDRC.
- Prain, G. and Dubbeling, M. (2011) *Urban Agriculture: A Sustainable Solution to Alleviating Urban Poverty, Addressing the Food Crisis, and Adapting to Climate Change-Case Studies of the cities of Accra, Nairobi, Lima and Bangalore*. RUAF Foundation.
- Prain, G., Karanja, N.K. and Lee-Smith, D. (eds) (2010) *African Urban Harvest: Agriculture in the Cities of Cameroon, Kenya and Uganda*. Springer and IDRC.
- Raschid-Sally, L. and Jayakody, P. (2008) 'Drivers and characteristics of wastewater agriculture in developing countries: results from a global assessment', *IWMI Research Report*, vol. 127, Colombo, Sri Lanka.
- Thebo, A.L., Drechsel, P. and Lambin, E.F. (2014) 'Global assessment of urban and peri-urban agriculture: irrigated and rainfed croplands', *Environmental Research Letters*, vol. 9, no. 11, pp. 1–9.
- UN Inter-Agency Standing Committee (UN-IASC) (2010) *Meeting Humanitarian Challenges in Urban Areas: Assessment and Strategy*. United Nations.
- van Veenhuizen, R. (ed.) (2006) *Cities Farming for the Future – Urban Agriculture for Green and Productive Cities*. RUAF Foundation, IDRC and IIRR.
- World Health Organization (WHO) (2006) *Guidelines for the Safe Use of Wastewater, Excreta and Grey Water: Wastewater Use in Agriculture (Volume 2)*. WHO.
- World Meteorological Organization (WMO) (2007) *UN Agency Calls for Urban Agriculture*. WMO Press Release, 7 December.
- Zeza, A. and Tasciotti, L. (2008) *Does Urban Agriculture Enhance Dietary Diversity? Empirical Evidence from a Sample of Developing Countries*. FAO.
- Alliance for Green Revolution in Africa (AGRA). (2016) *Africa Agricultural Status Report 2016: Progress Towards Agricultural Transformation in Africa*. AGRA.
- Amede, T., Auricht, C., Boffa, J.-M., Dixon, J., Mallawaarachchi, T., Rukuni, M. and Teckleworld-Deneke, T. (2017) *A Farming Systems Framework for Investment Planning and Priority Setting in Ethiopia*. ACIAR Technical Report 92, Canberra.
- Ayantunde, A.A., de Leeuw, J., Turner, M.D. and Said, M. (2011) Challenges of assessing the sustainability of (agro) pastoral systems. *Livestock Science* 139: 30–43.

- Dixon, J., Gulliver, A. and Gibbon, D. (2001) *Farming Systems and Poverty. Improving Farmer's Livelihoods in a Changing World*. FAO and World Bank, www.fao.org/farmingsystems/.
- FAO (2017) *Africa Regional Overview of Food Security and Nutrition: The Food Security and Nutrition-Conflict Nexus: Building Resilience for Food Security, Nutrition and Peace*. FAO.
- Faurès, J.M. and Santini, G. (2008) *Water and the Rural Poor: Interventions for Improving Livelihoods in Sub-Saharan Africa*. Water Resources, Development and Management Unit of FAO.
- Fischer, T., Byerlee, D. and Edmeades, G. (2014) *Crop Yields and Global Food Security: Will Yield Increase Continue to Feed the World?* Australian Centre for International Agricultural Research.
- Harris, D. and Orr, A. (2013) Is rainfed agriculture really a pathway from poverty? *Agricultural Systems* 123: 84–96.
- Herforth, A. and Ahmed, S. (2015) The food environment, its effects on dietary consumption, and the potential for measurement within agriculture–nutrition interventions. *Food Security* 7: 505–520.
- HLPE (2017) *Nutrition and Food Systems. A Report by the High Level Panel of Experts on Food Security and Nutrition of the Committee on World Food Security*. FAO.
- Howieson, J.G. and Dilworth, M.J. (eds) (2016) *Working with Rhizobia*. Australian Centre for International Agricultural Research.
- IFAD (2010) *Rural Poverty Report 2011. New Realities, New Challenges: New Opportunities for Tomorrow's Generation*. IFAD.
- Jagoret, P., Michel-Dounias, I., Snoeck, D., Todem Ngnogué, H. and Malézieux, E. (2011) Afforestation of savannah with cocoa agroforestry systems: a small-farmer innovation in central Cameroon. *Agroforestry Systems* 86(3): 493–504.
- Karanja, N., Njenga, M., Gathuru, K., Karanja, A. and Munyao, P.M. (2010) 'Crop–livestock–waste interactions in Nakuru's urban agriculture', in G. Prain, N.K. Karanja and D. Lee-Smith (eds) *African Urban Harvest: Agriculture in the Cities of Cameroon, Kenya and Uganda*, Springer and IDRC.
- Langeveld, H., Dixon, J. and van Keulen, H. (eds) (2013) *Biofuel Cropping Systems: Carbon, Land and Food*. Routledge.
- Lee-Smith, D. (2010) Cities feeding people: an update on urban agriculture in equatorial Africa. *Environment and Urbanization* 22(2): 483–499.
- Lilja, N., Dixon, J. and Eade, D. (eds) (2010) *Participatory Research and Gender Analysis: New Approaches*. Routledge.
- MEA (Millennium Ecosystem Assessment) (2005) *Ecosystems and Human Well-Being: Health Synthesis*. World Resources Institute.
- Rosling, H. with Rosling, O. and Rosling-Ronnlund, A. (2018) *Factfulness*. Sceptre, Hodder and Stoughton.
- van Ittersum, M.K., Martin K. van Ittersum, van Bussel L.G.J., Wolf, J., Grassini, P., van Wart, J., Guilpart, N., Claessens, L., de Groot, H., Wiebe, K., Mason-D'Croz, D., Yang, H., Boogaard, H., van Oort, P.A.J., van Loon, M.P., Saito, K., Adimo, O., Adjei-Nsiah, S., Agali, A., Bala, A., Chikowo, R., Kaizzi, K., Kouressy, M., Makoi, J.H.J.R., Ouattara, K., Tesfaye, K. and Cassman, K.G. (2016) Can sub-Saharan Africa feed itself? *PNAS* 113(52): 14964–14969.
- van Velthuizen, H., Fischer, G. and Hizsnyik, E. (2013) *Technical Annex: FS Characterization with GAEZ Data*. The African Farming Systems Update Project. IIASA.
- World Bank (2009) *Awakening Africa's Sleeping Giant: Prospects for Commercial Agriculture in the Guinea Savannah Zone and Beyond*. World Bank.
- Abate, T., Shiferaw, B., Menkir, A., Wegary, D., Kebede, Y., Tesfaye, K., Kassie, M., Bogale, G., Tadesse B. and Keno T. (2015) Factors that transformed maize productivity in Ethiopia. *Food Security* 7: 965–981.
- AGRA (2017) *Africa Agriculture Status Report: The Business of Smallholder Agriculture in Sub-Saharan Africa* (Issue 5). Nairobi, Kenya: Alliance for a Green Revolution in Africa.
- Amede, T., Auricht, C., Boffa, J.-M., Dixon, J., Mallawaarachchi, T., Rukuni, M. and Tecklewold-Deneke, T. (2017) *A Farming Systems Framework for Investment Planning and Priority Setting in Ethiopia*. ACIAR Technical Report 92, Canberra.

- Dixon, J. (2006) *Module 4: Investments in Sustainable Agricultural Intensification. Agricultural Investment Sourcebook*. World Bank.
- Dixon, J., Gulliver, A. and Gibbon, D. (2001) *Farming Systems and Poverty. Improving Farmer's Livelihoods in a Changing World*. FAO and World Bank, www.fao.org/farmingsystems/.
- Dror, I., Cadilhon, J.-J., Schut, M., Misiko, M. and Maheshwari, S. (eds) (2016) *Innovation Platforms for Agricultural Development: Evaluating the Mature Innovation Platforms Landscape*. Routledge.
- FAO (2011) *Save and Grow: A Policy Makers Guide to the Sustainable Intensification of Smallholder Crop Production*. FAO.
- FARA (2014) *Science Agenda for Agriculture in Africa: Connecting Science to Transform Agriculture in Africa*. FARA.
- Faurès, J.-M. and Santini, G. (2008) *Water and the Rural Poor: Interventions for Improving Livelihoods in Sub-Saharan Africa*. FAO and IFAD.
- Fischer, R.A. and Connor, D.J. (2018) Issues for cropping and agricultural science in the next 20 years. *Field Crops Research* 222: 121–142.
- InterAcademy Council (2004) *Realizing the Promise and Potential of African Agriculture*. InterAcademy Council, Amsterdam.
- Jayne, T.S., Mason, N.M., Burke, W.J. and Arigac, J. (2018) Review: Taking stock of Africa's second-generation agricultural input subsidy programs. *Food Policy* 75: 1–14.
- Makini, F.W., Kamau, G.K., Makelo, M.N., Adekunle, W., Mburathi, G.K., Misiko, M., Pali, P. and Dixon, J. (2013) *Operational Field Guide for Developing and Managing Local Agricultural Innovation Platforms*. KARI-ACIAR-AusAID, Nairobi.
- Qureshi, M.E., Dixon, J. and Wood, M. (2015) Public policies for improving food and nutrition security at different scales. *Food Security* 7: 393–403.
- van Ittersum, M.K. et al. (2016) Can sub-Saharan Africa feed itself? *PNAS* 113(52): 14964–14969.
- van Velthuisen, H., Fischer, G. and Hizsnyik, E. (2013) *Technical Annex: FS Characterization with GAEZ Data – The African Farming Systems Update Project*. IIASA, Laxenburg.



Taylor & Francis

Taylor & Francis Group

<http://taylorandfrancis.com>